



hugo

GERMAN

IN 3 MONTHS

**YOUR ESSENTIAL GUIDE TO
UNDERSTANDING AND
SPEAKING GERMAN**

WITH FREE AUDIO APP



hugo

GERMAN

IN 3 MONTHS

Sigrid-B. Martin

**YOUR ESSENTIAL GUIDE TO
UNDERSTANDING AND
SPEAKING GERMAN**

FREE AUDIO APP

About this eBook

Due to the complex integration of images and text, this DK eBook has been formatted to retain the design of the print edition. As a result, all elements are fixed in place, but can easily be enlarged by using the pinch-to-zoom function.

If you are previewing this eBook on a mobile phone, portrait mode is recommended. If previewing on a tablet or larger display, landscape mode will allow you to see facing pages at the same time (two page view).



Penguin
Random
House

THIRD EDITION

Series Editor Elise Bradbury
Senior Editor Amelia Petersen
Senior Art Editor Jane Ewart
Managing Editors Christine Stroyan, Carine Tracanelli
Managing Art Editor Anna Hall
Production Editor Jacqueline Street-Elkayam
Senior Production Controller Samantha Cross
Jacket Project Art Editor Surabhi Wadhwa-Gandhi
Jacket Design Development Manager Sophia MTT
Art Director Karen Self
Associate Publishing Director Liz Wheeler
Publishing Director Jonathan Metcalf

DK INDIA

Project Art Editor Anjali Sachar
Senior DTP Designer Shanker Prasad
Managing Editor Rohan Sinha
Managing Art Editor Sudakshina Basu

This revised edition published in Great Britain in 2022 by
Dorling Kindersley Limited
DK, One Embassy Gardens, 8 Viaduct Gardens,
London, SW11 7BW
First published in Great Britain by
Hugo's Language Books Limited

The authorised representative in the EEA is
Dorling Kindersley Verlag GmbH, Arnulfstr. 124,
80636 Munich, Germany

Copyright © 1990, 2003, 2022 Dorling Kindersley Limited
A Penguin Random House Company
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
001-326924-Jan/2022

Written by
Sigrid-B. Martin
Former lecturer in German
School of European Culture and Languages
University of Kent at Canterbury

All rights reserved.
No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in
or introduced into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form,
or by any means (electronic, mechanical, photocopying,
recording, or otherwise), without the prior written permission
of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record for this book
is available from the British Library.
ISBN: 978-0-2415-3739-8
Printed and bound in Latvia

For the curious
www.dk.com



This book was made with Forest Stewardship
Council™ certified paper – one small step
in DK's commitment to a sustainable future.
For more information go to
www.dk.com/our-green-pledge

Preface

This edition of *Hugo German in 3 Months* was written by Sigrid Martin, whose experience in teaching her native tongue ranges from beginners to post-graduate level. The course is designed for those learning at home who want to acquire a good working knowledge of the language in a short time.

The course begins with an explanation of German pronunciation. Referring to our system of 'imitated pronunciation' in the initial weeks of the course will help you learn to understand and pronounce German. However, we strongly encourage you to download the free *DK Hugo in 3 Months* app (see p.5) and to listen to the accompanying audio – this will enable you to pick up the distinctive sounds of the German language. The rest of the course contains the following teaching elements to provide a complete introduction to written and conversational German:

Grammar These sections present the basics of German in a practical way, in an order designed for the learner to make rapid progress. Constructions are clearly explained and examples are included. Listen to the audio to hear the texts pronounced and repeat them out loud. The exercises are designed to consolidate what you've learned as you put the rules into practice.

Vocabulary New words are included in the vocabulary lists: these will help you understand the texts and complete the exercises.

Exercises The exercises will help you remember the rules through applying them. Check your answers against the key at the back of the book. If you make mistakes and don't understand why, go back to the relevant section and read it again.

Conversations The conversations reinforce the points that have been seen, as well as introducing idioms and colloquialisms for a thorough grasp of everyday German. We suggest that you listen to the conversations first, then

read them aloud and see how closely you can imitate the voices on the recording.

Ideally, you should try to spend about an hour a day on the course, although there is no hard and fast rule on this. Do as much as you feel capable of doing; it's much better to learn a little at a time, and to learn that thoroughly.

Before beginning a new section, always spend ten minutes revising what you learned the day before. Then read each new section carefully, ensuring that you have fully understood the grammar, before listening to the audio to learn the pronunciation of sample sentences and new vocabulary. Finally, complete the exercises at the end of the section. Repeat them until the answers come easily. Repetition is vital to language learning. The more often you listen to a conversation or repeat an oral exercise, the faster your listening skills and fluency in speaking will improve.

When you've completed the course, you should have a very good understanding of the language – more than sufficient for general holiday or business purposes, and enough to lead to language validation tests if this is your eventual aim. We hope you enjoy *Hugo German in 3 Months*, and wish you success with your studies!

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The author would particularly like to thank her husband John Martin, for many years the Director of the Institute of Languages and Linguistics at the University of Kent at Canterbury, without whose help she could never have written *Hugo German in 3 Months*. Thanks also to Naomi Laredo, whose expert editing and calming influence in times of stress ensured that the text remained 'on track', and to all the others who gave their encouragement and made comments on various drafts of this course.

About the audio app

The audio app that accompanies this German course contains audio recordings for most of the numbered sections, vocabulary boxes, conversations, and exercises.

 Where you see this symbol, it indicates that there is no audio for that section.

To start using the audio with this book, first download the *DK Hugo in 3 Months* app on your smartphone or tablet from the App Store or Google Play. Then select German from the list of titles.

Please note that this app is not a stand-alone course. It is designed to be used together with the book, to familiarize you with German speech and to provide examples for you to repeat aloud.

Contents

<u>Week 1</u>	<u>9</u>	<u>Week 5</u>	<u>53</u>
Speaking German		Asking questions	
The alphabet and spelling		Forming negative sentences	
Pronunciation		The imperative (command form)	
Vowels and vowel combinations		Adjectives and adverbs	
Consonants		Exercises, vocabulary and conversation	
The hiatus			
Word stress			
Punctuation			
<u>Week 2</u>	<u>25</u>	<u>Week 6</u>	<u>67</u>
Word endings and word order		Prepositions	
Greetings and everyday phrases		The expression es gibt	
The definite article ('the')		('there is', 'there are')	
The plural form of 'the'		Exercises, vocabulary and conversation	
Forming the plural of nouns			
Exercises			
<u>Week 3</u>	<u>32</u>	<u>Week 7</u>	<u>76</u>
Grammatical case and declension		Words with the same declensions as der, die, das	
Personal pronouns		Possessive adjectives	
Useful verbs: 'to be', 'to have', and 'to make'		Adjectives before nouns	
Exercises, vocabulary and conversation		Ordinal numbers and fractions	
		Informal address	
		Word order	
		Exercises, vocabulary and conversation	
<u>Week 4</u>	<u>39</u>	<u>Week 8</u>	<u>90</u>
The indefinite article ('a'/'an')		More on word order	
Numbers		Auxiliary verbs: 'can', 'must', 'will', etc.	
Prices		Using auxiliary verbs	
The dative case (indirect object)		Measurements and quantities	
Verbs used with indirect objects		The expressions es ist and es sind ('there is'/'there are')	
Exercises, vocabulary and conversation		Verbs for 'to be' indicating position	
		Verbs for 'to put' indicating position	
		More about prepositions	
		Exercises, vocabulary and conversation	

Week 9 107 Week 12 179

More about **der, die, das**
Uses of the present tense
Present tense: irregular verbs
The present perfect
Which auxiliary: **sein** or **haben**?
Uses of the present perfect
The past participle
Time expressions
Nicht wahr?, etc.
Exercises, vocabulary and conversation

Week 10 133

The genitive case (possession)
Prepositions requiring the genitive
Masculine **n**-nouns
More on separable-prefix verbs
Zu + infinitive
Expressing purpose
Ohne and **statt**
The passive voice
The present perfect with modal verbs
The simple past tense
Exercises, vocabulary and conversation

Week 11 155

Terms that express quantity
Using adjectives as nouns
Linking clauses
Linking words affecting word order
Reflexive pronouns
Reflexive verbs
Exercises, vocabulary and conversation

More on the simple past tense
Stem-changing verbs in the past
The past perfect (e.g. 'I had been')
The general subjunctive
More on the general subjunctive
Conditional statements ('If... then...')
The passive with **zu** + infinitive
Idiomatic particles that express mood
Exercises, vocabulary and conversation

Week 13 199

The present participle (the -ing form) and alternatives to using it
More linking words
Addressing a group informally: the plural 'you': (**ihr**)
Subordinate clauses with two infinitives
Impersonal expressions
The special subjunctive
Reported speech
Word order in reported speech
Participle clauses
Exercises, vocabulary and conversation

Reading practice **223**

Eine Reise durch Europa

Key to exercises **225**

Mini-dictionary **233**

German–English

Index **251**

Week 1

1

- *the German alphabet and spelling*
- *pronunciation*
- *the hiatus (pause between two sounds)*
- *word stress*
- *German punctuation*

1.1 SPEAKING GERMAN



Although there are a few sounds in German that will be unfamiliar to English speakers, on the whole the pronunciation is not too tricky to pick up. Don't worry if your pronunciation is less than perfect; the more you practise, the more it will improve.

As you work through the course, listen to the audio and repeat what you hear out loud. Don't be embarrassed to exaggerate the accent, this will help you master the sounds. Whenever you need to, you can refer back to the following explanations and review them.

1.2 THE ALPHABET AND SPELLING

(1) The German alphabet contains all 26 letters of the English alphabet. In addition, three of the vowels have a distinct form with an umlaut (") **ä/Ä, ö/Ö, ü/Ü**, which represent entirely different sounds from the same letters without the umlaut.

(2) Note that double **ss** must be written with the letter **ß** (which never starts a word) when the preceding sound is either a long vowel (see section 1.4 [1]) or a vowel combination (see section 1.4 [2]):

Kuss	<i>but</i>	Gruß
floss	<i>but</i>	Floß
blass	<i>but</i>	fraß
	<i>and</i>	Fleiß
		Strauß
		äußern

(3) All nouns, not just names, begin with a capital letter. The pronoun **Sie**, the formal word for 'you' (see section 3.2), and related formal pronouns (e.g. **Ihr** 'your') always begin with a capital. But unlike in English, the first-person singular pronoun ('I') starts with a lower-case letter (**ich**).

(4) Here are the letters of the alphabet and how they are said out loud shown in our system of imitated pronunciation (see the following sections). This will be useful if you have to spell out a word.

A	<u>ah</u>	J	yot	S	es
B	<u>beh</u>	K	<u>kah</u>	T	<u>teh</u>
C	<u>tseh</u>	L	el	U	<u>oo</u>
D	<u>deh</u>	M	em	V	fow
E	<u>eh</u>	N	en	W	<u>veh</u>
F	ef	O	<u>oh</u>	X	iks
G	<u>geh</u>	P	<u>peh</u>	Y	<u>uepseelon</u>
H	<u>hah</u>	Q	<u>koo</u>	Z	tset
I	<u>ee</u>	R	er		

1.3 PRONUNCIATION

There is greater consistency between the way a word is spelled and how it's pronounced in German than in English, making German more phonetic. However, some letters are pronounced differently from the same letters in English, and others appear in unfamiliar combinations, so we'll focus on these in the next sections. Listen to the audio and repeat each of the examples aloud.

Note that no English meanings are given for the examples in this first week of the course. The goal here is just to concentrate on the sounds of the words, so resist the temptation to wonder what they mean for the moment.

The following letters are pronounced differently from their English equivalents, or their pronunciation can vary depending on their position in a word.

Imitated pronunciation

- b** [b], [p] At the start of words and syllables, these are pronounced as in English. At the end of words and syllables (standing either alone or in a cluster of consonants of which they may not be the final letter), **b** is pronounced as **p**, **d** as **t**, and **g** as **k** (or **ch**): this means that the end of **habt** sounds like **klappt**; that **wird** sounds exactly the same as **Wirt**; **Rad** is pronounced like **Rat**; **Erdöl** sounds like **Ert-öl**; **folg** sounds like **Volk**; and **Krieg** like **kriek**. (Most of these words actually exist and some are therefore homophones: words that are spelled differently but sound alike.)
- c** is principally used in the combinations **ch** and **ck**, but is rarely found on its own except in foreign words.
- j** [y] is almost always pronounced like the English y at the start of a word (e.g. 'yet', 'young'), as in **Junge**, **Jammer**.
- q** is always followed by a **u**, but the combination is pronounced differently than in English, and is similar to k + v in rapid succession, as in **quer**, **Quatsch**, **Qualität**.
- s** [s], [z] As in English, **s** is pronounced in two different ways: like the s sound in 'sits' and 'its', or like the z sound in 'busy' and 'is'. However, note that whereas in English the s sound occurs at the start of words or syllables, and the z sound usually occurs at the end, the opposite is the case in German. The German **s** is always pronounced like z at the start of a

word (except in the combinations **sp** and **st**, see below), and like **s** at the end of words and syllables.

Here are some examples:

like z

**sein, Symbol, Absicht (Ab|sicht),
Fürsorge (Für|sorge), Rose (Ro|se),
Riese (Rie|se)**

like s

**Gast, längst, Wespe (Wes|pe), Muster
(Mus|ter), meins, meines (mei|nes)**

Words containing both sounds:

**süß, seins, seines (sei|nes), dieses
(die|ses)**

[sh]

s in the combinations **sp** and **st** at the start of words and syllables is pronounced like the English 'sh':

**Speck, spät, spülen, gespannt
(ge|spannt), Stamm, sterben,
Strecke, steigen, erstaunt
(er|staunt), verstimmt (ver|stimmt),
Anstand (An|stand)**

th [t]

is never like 'th' in 'this' or 'thing', but pronounced simply as **t**. Found only in words of foreign origin, for example:

**Apotheke, Hypothek, Thymian,
These**

tion [tsiohn]

is found only in the many imported words ending in **-tion**, such as:

Station, Aktion, Funktion, Tradition

v [f]

is almost always pronounced **f** as in 'from': **Vater, von, Verlag, bevor**

- w** [v] is like the v in 'very', for example:
was, Wein, Weg, Wirt
- y** [ue] is pronounced as a vowel, not a consonant, and sounds like the German (short) vowel **ü** (see section 1.4), as in:
System, sympatisch
- z** [ts] is NEVER like the English z as in 'hazard', but like t + s spoken in rapid succession, almost simultaneously, often with no more than a trace of the t. Something similar is found in the usual English pronunciation of 'Mozart', although in German this sound can also start a word, which can seem very odd to English speakers. Examples:
Zeit, zu, Zinsen, Zange, Zorn, zusammen, beizeiten, inzwischen (in|zwischen), Weizen (Wei|zen), Schnauze (Schnau|ze), Konzert, Winzer, Geiz, Sitz, Franz, Holz, Harz, Lenz

Unfamiliar groups of consonants, or consonants in unfamiliar places in words, can look intimidating, even if the individual sounds are not necessarily difficult to pronounce.

It can be helpful to learn these combinations and the corresponding pronunciation as 'blocks'.

- dsch** [dj] is pronounced like the j in 'jump'. It is quite rare and only used in certain foreign words: **Dschungel, Dschihad, Dschunke**
- gd** [kt] is pronounced 'kt', like the end of 'flicked'. It is fairly rare, although the first example is a frequent word:
Jagd, Magd

hd, hl(t), hm(t), hn(t), hr(t), ht	This h is not pronounced; it just indicates that the preceding vowel is pronounced as a long vowel (see section 1.4). Similarly, ignore the h between vowels, except in compound words: Fehde, Mehl, wählt, lahm, rahmt, kühn, wohnt, wahr, lehrt, weht, sehen, ruhen BUT Seehafen (See hafen), bleihaltig (blei haltig)
ng	When this combination occurs between vowels, the g is barely vocalized, as in 'singer': Anger, Finger, Hunger
pf	Whether at the beginning or end of words and syllables, the p + f are spoken in rapid succession, almost simultaneously, often with no more than a trace of the p: Pfeil, Pferd, Pfund, Dampfer, impfen, Kupfer, Sumpf, Krampf, glimpflich
sch, schl, schm, schn, schr, schw	sch is like 'sh' in 'shut' or 'wish' whether at the start or end of words and syllables. Note that sch + a consonant is only found at the beginning of words: Schande, Rausch, Schlampe, schmelzen, Schnauze, Schraube, schwitzen
tsch [ch]	is like 'ch' in 'cheap', 'much' or 'match'. It can be found at the start of a word, but is more frequently in the middle or end: tschüs, Tscheche, Matsch, futsch, Deutschland, Rutsch
tz [ts]	This only occurs in the middle or at the end of words. It sounds like the 'ts' in 'gets', or like the German z : plötzlich, platzen, sitzen, Fritz, Gesetz

- zw** [tsv] This is like t + s + v spoken in rapid succession and occurs only at the start of words and syllables:
**Zwang, bezwingen (be|zwingen),
 Zwerg, zwei, inzwischen
 (in|zwischen), Zweck**

1.4 VOWELS AND VOWEL COMBINATIONS

Though there are only eight letters that represent vowels in German (the five in the English alphabet, plus **ä, ö, ü**), there are twice as many vowel sounds, because each can be pronounced either as a long or a short vowel. (This refers to the duration, or length, of the vowel sound – long vowels are drawn out more.)

This distinction is important to master, as it can make a big difference in making yourself understood. The spelling can sometimes provide a clue to knowing whether a vowel is long or short.

The pronunciation of a vowel is long if:

- the vowel is doubled: **Beet, Saat, Boot**
- the vowel is followed by **h**:
Bahn, Huhn, Lohn
- the vowel **i** is followed by **e**:
fies, mies, Grieß
- the vowel is followed by **ß**:
Maß, bloß, Muße, Füße, Blöße, Maße

The pronunciation of a vowel is short if:

- the vowel is followed by a doubled consonant or by **ck**:
Hütte, Affe, Zweck
- the vowel is followed by **ss**:
blass, Ross, muss
- the vowel is followed by **ng**:
Rang, jung, ging

Detailed pronunciation tips for each vowel sound follow, but keep in mind that trying to describe pronunciations in terms of English sounds can only provide approximations and are not a substitute for listening to German. Make sure to listen to the examples in the audio and repeat them out loud.

One general guideline is to try to pronounce German single-sound vowels with a greater sharpness and energy than English vowels.

(1) Single vowels

long **a** [ah] This is pronounced in a similar way to the 'ah' in the words 'father' or 'barn'.

short **a** [ah] This is a shorter a, as in 'fat' or 'track'.

**Bahn/Bann, Kahn/kann,
Wahn/wann, kam/Kamm,
mahn/Mann, Saat/satt**

long **e** [eh] This is pronounced like the 'ay' or 'eh' sound in 'lane' or 'drape'.

short **e** [e] This is a shorter e, as in 'get' or 'crept'.

**Beet/Bett, wen/wenn, den/denn,
hehl/hell, fehl/Fell, gehl/gell**

long **i(e)** [ee] This is pronounced like the 'ee' sound in 'keen' or 'lean'.

short **i** [i] This is a shorter i, as in 'fit' or 'clip'.

**ihm/im, schief/Schiff, Stil/still,
rief/Riff, siech/sich, mies/miss**

long **o** [oh] This is pronounced like the 'oh' sound in 'home' or 'bone'.

short **o** [o] This is a shorter o, as in 'shot' or 'crop'.

**Hof/hoff, Ofen/offen, wohne/Wonne,
Wohle/Wolle**

long **u** [oo] This is pronounced like the 'oo' sound in 'moon' or 'doom'.

short **u** [oo] This is a shorter u, as in 'put' or 'foot'.

**Pute/Putte, Ruhm/Rum,
Kruke/Krucke, Mus/muss**

long **ä** [e] This is pronounced like 'ay' in 'lane', but more open – in between 'lane' and 'leg'.

short **ä** [e] This sounds just like the German **e**: 'let'

**käme/Kämme, stähle/Ställe,
Pfähle/Fälle, wähle/Wälle**

long **ö** [oe] Say the long **e** ('eh') while rounding and protruding the lips.

short **ö** [oe] Say the short **e** ('e') while rounding and protruding the lips. Both are similar to the tight, pursed vowel in the French *œuvre*.

Höhle/Hölle, Flöße/flösse

long **ü** [ue] Say the long **i(e)** ('ee') while rounding and protruding the lips.

short **ü** [ue] Say the short **i** ('i') while rounding and protruding the lips. Both are similar to the tight, pursed vowel in the French *une*.

**Wüste/wüsste, Hüte/Hütte,
fühlen/füllen, führst/Fürst**

(2) Diphthongs

Diphthongs (vowel combinations that glide from one vowel sound to another) are always drawn out rather than short. The three diphthongs below resemble vowel combinations in English, but they will sound more German if you move your tongue (and jaw) in a more pronounced way.

ai/ei [y] This sounds similar to the word 'eye' – think 'Einstein':

Hain, Mai, Kai, weiß, Kleid, weich

au [ow] This sounds similar to the 'ow' diphthong in 'cow' or 'mouth':

Raum, Zaun, Maul, Haus, Haut, Raub

äu/eu [oy] This sounds similar to the 'oy' diphthong in 'void' or 'annoy':

häuft, läuft, Säume, deutet, freut, neun

(3) Unstressed syllables containing **e** or **er**

There are also many words with an unstressed vowel sound that is similar to the initial **a** in 'about'.

[e] Unstressed syllables containing the vowel **e** have a sound similar to that in 'the'. It is a sort of neutral 'uh' sound, but with a trace of the short **e** as in 'get':

Befund, Gericht, waagerecht, Hilferuf

The above is especially true if the **e** ends a word. In this case, the final **e** is barely audible. Just the hint of an 'uh' is voiced:

Hilfe, welche, Menge, ihre

An unstressed **e** is barely audible even if followed by a consonant (other than **r**):

Hallenbad, Spiegelei, Dankesbrief, deutet

[uh]

Unstressed syllables ending in **er** are pronounced in a similar way to the British pronunciation; the **r** is NOT pronounced, resembling an 'uh' sound:

Wiederkehr, Kinderwagen, Messerkante, besser, heller, ihrer

The same sound, only lengthened, occurs if the **er** is followed by **n**. Again, the **r** is NOT pronounced:

gestern, Brüdern, andernfalls, kentern

Along with the audio, listen to and practise the distinction between **e** and **er**, and between **en** and **ern**, in the following pairs of words:

Ehe/eher, Feste/fester, Silbe/Silber, Güte/Güter, Lehren/Lehrern, wischen/Wischern, Wäschen/Wäschern

1.5 CONSONANTS

As mentioned in section 1.3, most of the consonants are fairly straightforward for English speakers to pronounce. The only three consonants that are quite different from English sounds are: **ch**, **l**, and **r**.

ch

This letter combination can have two radically different pronunciations, neither of which occurs in English:

- (1) [h] When **ch** follows the vowels **e, ei, eu, i, ie, ä, äu, ü** or a consonant, it sounds

something like the initial h in 'Hugo' or 'human' aspirated very forcefully. Force the air through the mouth, drawing out the h sound:

Blech, Reich, Seuche, mich, riechen, Bäche, Bäuche, Küche, Storch, Dolch, durch

The same sound is used in three common words of foreign origin, **Chemie, China, Chirurg**, and at the start of the diminutive ending **-chen** (conveying 'little ...'):

Mädchen, Riemchen, Häuschen, Küsschen, Gläschen, Frauchen

It is also a common pronunciation of the consonant **g**, either alone or with other consonants, when it is at the end of a word or syllable following any of the vowels or diphthongs listed for the [ɪ] pronunciation of **g**. It is an alternative to pronouncing the final **g** as a **k** (see section 1.3):

wichtig, grantig, Predigt, gütig

- (2) [k] When **ch** follows **a, au, o, u**, it is a guttural sound similar to the Scottish pronunciation of 'loch' (think of the German pronunciation of 'Bach'). It is made by tensing the back of the throat while forcing the breath through it:
auch, Bach, Suche, Loch, brauchen, Sucht, machen

l

In English, there are a range of subtly different pronunciations of **l** according to its position in a word and the surrounding letters. There is only one sound for the German **l**, however, whatever its context.

The closest parallels in English are the sounds in 'clean', 'leek', and 'language' (although not exactly), whereas those in 'vault', 'feel', 'Oliver', 'culvert', and 'apple' are different from the German sound. The tip of the tongue should be placed against the upper gum and the tongue kept flat:

lieb, leben, lang, laut, Leute; Klippe, Klang, Flamme, klug, Flucht; goldig, Walzer, älter, albern, ulkig; belebt, Brille, Rolle, völlig; fällig; Esel, fühl, voll, wohl, Stahl; wedelt, wählt, Silber, Felder, Helm

r

The letter **r** (although not pronounced in the combination **er**, see section 1.4) is 'gargled'. This sound is made at the back of the throat like **ch**, but with less breath forced through. It sounds a little like the French guttural **r**.

r is pronounced in this way:

- at the start of a word:
Rand, rund, Rasen, Riese
- after another consonant at the start of a word:
Frau, grün, Gras, Gruß

- between vowels or diphthongs in the middle of words:

Beere, Fähre, Karre, mürrisch, waren

r is not pronounced as a consonant but as a neutral vowel sound similar to the vowel glide in British English, lengthening the preceding vowel, when it is:

- alone at the end of a word or syllable:
besser, woher, war, klar, Herr, Meer, mehr, fror, gar, wurde, warte, würdig (note that **Narr** is an exception and has the consonant sound)
- before another consonant at the end of a word or syllable:
Schwert, Wurst, Herz, warnte, horchte

1.6 THE HIATUS

Whereas in English, words are often run together so that a word beginning with a vowel is linked to the preceding word with the final consonant acting as a bridge, this does not occur in German.

Words beginning with a vowel are preceded with a hiatus, which is a brief pause between two sounds. In English, you can sometimes hear this pause between two vowel sounds: for example, in the words 're-elect' or 'cooperate', or in the expression 'Uh oh!'.

In German, this pause also occurs within compound words or words with a prefix before a vowel:

mach * aus, im * Auge, hau * ab, Vor*arbeiter, miss*-achten, ge*einigt, im * Ofen, würde * ich * auch

Compare the pronunciation of **hau * ab** with the English 'How are you?', or **Vor*arbeiter** with 'for ages'.

1.7 WORD STRESS

1

The rhythm of a language has a lot to do with where the stress falls in syllables and within sentences. In German words, the stress usually falls on the first syllable, although there are many exceptions.

One reliable rule is that whereas all English words starting with 'un-' are unstressed on that first syllable, such words in German put the stress on the **un-**:
unglücklich, unerfahren, unfreundlich, ungeduldig

As we will be discovering, in German it is possible – and common – to create compound words out of smaller word units. In these compound words, the stress is on the stressed syllable of the first word unit:

**kreideweiß, Plattenspieler, Brillenetui,
Studentenwohnheim (kreide|weiß, Platten|spieler,
Brillen|etui, Studenten|wohn|heim)**

Most of the exceptions to the rule of the stress on the first syllable are either words of foreign origin or words containing specifically unstressed first syllables or prefixes (see section 9.7):

foreign words:

**kontrollieren, telefonieren, Maschine, Paket,
offiziell**

unstressed prefixes:

**be|sprechen, miss|brauchen, ver|raten, ge|lingen,
er|röten**

However, some short words in frequent use are also exceptions, while combinations with **da-** and **wo-** (see sections 8.8 and 11.4) are usually not stressed on the **da-** or **wo-**:

**jedoch, sogar, damit, dazu, daneben, worauf,
inzwischen**

In the imitated pronunciation, the stressed syllable is always printed in bold type. You can also refer to a German dictionary to check where the word stress falls, as well as pronunciation.

1.8 PUNCTUATION



In German, you will notice that commas sometimes appear where they would not be used in English. This has to do with rules regarding separating clauses. In the two English examples below, the commas or lack of commas convey different meanings:

My sister, who hates noise, ended up staying in a hotel next to a night club.
The woman who rang yesterday was a friend of my sister's.

But in German, in the second sentence, there would have to be commas following 'woman' and 'yesterday' in line with the punctuation rules for clauses. Just be aware of this – commas in German have a more strict grammatical function rather than denoting meaning.

The punctuation used for quoted speech is also different from English usage (see section 13.7), and colons are used more often, to introduce short inserts in the middle of sentences, for example. Exclamation marks are also used more frequently than in English.

Week 2

2

- *greetings and useful everyday phrases*
- *two key differences with English: inflection and word order*
- *the definite article **der, die, das** ('the') and how its form varies according to the gender of the noun it refers to and whether the noun is singular or plural*
- *how to form the plural of nouns*

2.1 WORD ENDINGS AND WORD ORDER



(1) When the form of a word changes (typically the ending) to express a grammatical function or some other attribute such as number or gender, this is called inflection. German is a much more highly inflected language than English: several forms may be possible for words that are invariable in English.

(2) The word order in a German sentence is often different from the word order in English. 'I can't find the key because it's too dark' would be 'I can the key not find because it too dark is' or 'The key can I not find because it too dark is'.

These two key differences between the languages will be introduced gradually throughout the course. Don't worry!

2.2 GREETINGS AND EVERYDAY PHRASES

Throughout Germany, the most common greeting during the daytime is **Guten Tag!** (Good day!) (or, in the morning, **Guten Morgen!**). In the evening people say **Guten Abend!** In southern Germany and Austria, **Grüß Gott!** is usual at any time of day. All these are often accompanied by a handshake, even within the family.

After the greeting, one person will often add **Wie geht's?** or **Wie geht's Ihnen?** (How are you?), to which the response is usually **Danke, gut,** or **Gut, danke** (Fine, thanks), or simply **Danke**.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

goo-ten tahk; **goo**-ten **moe**-gen; **goo**-ten **ah**-bent;
grues got; vee gehts **ee**-nen; **dahng**-ke goot

Exercise 1

Practise saying the sentences in this dialogue until you feel comfortable with them.

Two hard-up customers at a refreshment kiosk

- KUNDE Guten Tag!
- BESITZERIN Guten Tag! Bitte schön ...?
- KUNDE Zwei Cola und eine Wurst mit Brot, bitte.
- BESITZERIN Was? Sie wollen zwei Cola aber nur eine Wurst?
- KUNDE Ja ..., das heißt, ja und nein. Wie teuer ist eine Wurst?
- BESITZERIN Nur drei Euro.
- KUNDE Na gut, dann zwei Cola und zweimal Wurst mit Brot.
- BESITZERIN Bitte schön ... Zehn Euro zusammen.
- KUNDE Danke schön. Auf Wiedersehen!
- BESITZERIN Auf Wiedersehen!

Translation

- CUSTOMER Hello!
- MANAGER Hello! Yes, can I help you?
- CUSTOMER Two colas and one hotdog (lit. 'sausage with bread'), please.
- MANAGER What? You want two colas but only one hotdog (lit. 'sausage')?
- CUSTOMER Yes ... I mean yes and no. How much is a hotdog?
- MANAGER Only three euros.
- CUSTOMER All right, then two colas and hotdogs.
- MANAGER Here you are ... Ten euros altogether.
- CUSTOMER Thank you. Goodbye!
- MANAGER Goodbye!

2.3 THE DEFINITE ARTICLE ('THE')

In our first example of inflection in German, there are a total of six words for 'the': **der, die, das, den, dem, des**. It is always a three-letter word starting with **d-**, plus an ending that can depend on three factors. The first of these factors is the gender of the noun.

All German nouns are either masculine (m.), feminine (f.) or neuter (n.). This is the case of nouns that refer to people, but it's also the case for objects. When you learn a new noun, try to remember its gender, as this affects certain other words used with the noun in a sentence.

When a singular noun is the subject of the sentence, the definite article 'the' is **der** (for a masculine noun), **die** (for a feminine noun), or **das** (for a neuter noun):

Der Junge (m.) ist krank. The boy is ill.

so der Junge

Der Preis (m.) ist hoch. The price is high.

so der Preis

Die Tante (f.) ist freundlich. The aunt is kind.

so die Tante

Die Farbe (f.) ist dunkel. The colour is dark.

so die Farbe

Das Kind (n.) ist nett. The child is nice.

so das Kind

Das Haus (n.) ist alt. The house is old.

so das Haus

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

deh-uh **yoong**-e ist krahnk; deh-uh prys; hohk;
dee **tan**-te; **froynt**-lih; dee fah-be; **doong**-kel; dahs kint;
net; das hows; ahl't

Exercise 2

Learn the lists of words in **A** about house and family, saying each word with **der**, **die**, or **das** in front of it.

Then cover up the lists and read out the words in **B** giving each word the correct definite article (**der**, **die**, or **das**), and checking that you know the meaning.

Finally, cover up **B** and give the German words preceded by **der**, **die**, or **das** for each English word listed in **C**.

(NOTE: We won't include this type of exercise again, but you could devise a similar exercise for yourself with each new set of words each week.)

A

m. (der)		f. (die)		n. (das)	
Mann	man/ husband	Frau	woman/ wife	Kind	child
Vater	father	Mutter	mother	Mädchen	girl
Sohn	son	Tochter	daughter	Haus	house
Bruder	brother	Schwester	sister	Zimmer	room
Wirt	landlord	Wirtin	landlady	Fenster	window
Tisch	table	Bett	bed		
Stuhl	chair	Küche	kitchen	Wasser	water
Schrank	cupboard	Tür	door	Auto	car
Flur	hall	Zeitung	newspaper	Buch	book
Hund	dog	Uhr	clock	Messer	knife
		Katze	cat		

B

Auto, Fenster, Wirt, Uhr, Tochter, Haus, Flur, Messer, Tür, Hund, Küche, Katze, Bruder, Mann, Kind, Zeitung, Sohn, Schwester, Stuhl, Buch, Wirtin, Schrank, Frau, Bett, Vater, Zimmer, Mutter, Wasser, Mädchen, Tisch

C

book, knife, sister, door, newspaper, woman, room, landlord, car, table, water, clock, house, window, child, cupboard, girl, cat, kitchen, father, dog, brother, daughter, hall, mother, chair, son, man, landlady, bed

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION:

mahn; **fah**-tuh; zohn; **broo**-duh; viert; tish; shtool;
 shrahnk; floo-uh; hoont; frow; **moo**-tuh; **tok**-tuh; **shves**-
 tuh; **vier**-tin; **kue**-he; tue-uh; **tsy**-toong; oo-uh; **kaht**-se;
 kint; **met**-hen; hows; **tsi**-muh; **fens**-tuh; bet; **vah**-suh;
ow-toh; book; **me**-suh

2.4 THE PLURAL FORM OF 'THE'

When the noun refers to more than one thing, **die** is always used for 'the', regardless of gender:

die	{	Preise sind hoch	the	{	prices are high
		Farben sind dunkel			colours are dark
		Häuser sind alt			houses are old

Here's a summary:

singular			plural
m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
der	die	das	die

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

deh-uh; dee; dahs; dee

2.5 FORMING THE PLURAL OF NOUNS

In English, nouns generally inflect to show the plural by adding -s (although there are variations). In German, there are various ways to form the plural of a noun. Here are some basic guidelines, but it's a good idea to try to learn the plural form when you encounter a new noun:

(1) Feminine nouns usually add **-n** or **-en** to the singular:

Küche kitchen → **Küchen** kitchens

Zeitung newspaper → **Zeitungen** newspapers

Frau woman → **Frauen** women

But other plural forms for feminine words are possible (e.g. the addition of an umlaut, changing the vowel sound, or **-nen**):

Mutter mother → **Mütter** mothers

Tochter daughter → **Töchter** daughters

Wirtin landlady → **Wirtinnen** landladies

(2) Masculine and neuter nouns often add:

-e **Hund** dog → **Hunde** dogs

-en **Bett** bed → **Betten** beds

-er **Kind** child → **Kinder** children

and any of these endings may be accompanied by a change in the sound of certain vowels:

-a- **Mann** man → **Männer** men

-o- **Sohn** son → **Söhne** sons

-u- **Stuhl** chair → **Stühle** chairs

-au- **Haus** house → **Häuser** houses

(3) Some masculine and neuter nouns don't change at all:

Zimmer → **Zimmer** room, rooms

Messer → **Messer** knife, knives

(4) Some masculine and neuter nouns only have a change in the vowel sound, which adds an umlaut to indicate this:

Vater father → **Väter** fathers

Bruder brother → **Brüder** brothers

(5) Some words taken from other languages add **-s**:

Auto car → **Autos** cars

Exercise 3

A lists the words you learned in Exercise 2, but they are now shown first with the plural abbreviation used in dictionaries* and then in the full plural form. Learn these, then cover up **A** and try to say the plurals of all the singular words in list **B**.

A Mann (-er)	Männer	Frau (-en)	Frauen
Vater (-)	Väter	Mutter (-)	Mütter
Sohn (-e)	Söhne	Tochter (-)	Töchter
Bruder (-)	Brüder	Schwester (-n)	Schwestern
Wirt (-e)	Wirte	Wirtin (-nen)	Wirtinnen
Tisch (-e)	Tische	Küche (-n)	Küchen
Stuhl (-e)	Stühle	Tür (-en)	Türen
Schrank (-e)	Schränke	Zeitung (-en)	Zeitungen
Flur (-e)	Flure	Uhr (-en)	Uhren
Hund (-e)	Hunde	Katze (-n)	Katzen
Kind (-er)	Kinder	Bett (-en)	Betten
Mädchen (-)	Mädchen	Wasser	No plural
Haus (-er)	Häuser	Auto (-s)	Autos
Zimmer (-)	Zimmer	Buch (-er)	Bücher
Fenster (-)	Fenster	Messer (-)	Messer

*In following word lists and in the mini-dictionary at the end of the course, the plural of each noun is given by the appropriate abbreviation in brackets.

B Auto, Fenster, Wirt, Uhr, Tochter, Haus, Flur, Messer, Tür, Hund, Küche, Katze, Bruder, Mann, Kind, Zeitung, Sohn, Schwester, Stuhl, Buch, Wirtin, Schrank, Frau, Bett, Vater, Zimmer, Mutter, Mädchen, Tisch

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

me-nuh; **fe**-tuh; **zoe**-ne; **brue**-duh; **vier**-te; **ti**-she;
shtue-le; **shreng**-ke; **floo**-re; **hoon**-de; **kin**-duh;
met-hen; **hoy**-zuh; **tsi**-muh; **fens**-tuh; **frow**-en;
mue-tuh; **toeh**-tuh; **shves**-tuhn; **vier**-ti-nen; **kue**-hen;
tue-ren; **tsy**-toong-en; **oo**-ren; **kaht**-sen; **be**-ten;
ow-tohs; **bue**-huh; **me**-suh

Week 3

- *grammatical case and declension in German*
- *the definite article ('the') and case*
- *personal pronouns ('I' and 'me', 'we' and 'us', etc.)*
- *the present tense of **sein** ('to be') and **haben** ('to have')*
- *the present tense conjugations of regular verbs such as **machen** ('to make')*

3

3.1 GRAMMATICAL CASE AND DECLENSION

So far we've seen that the form of the definite article **der**, **die**, or **das** depends on:

- (1) gender (m./f./n.)
- (2) number (singular/plural)

The third factor that affects the form is grammatical case. Case is a way of marking certain words according to their function in a sentence. Compare the below:

A **Der Hund ist harmlos.** The dog is harmless.

B **Der Junge liebt den Hund.** The boy loves the dog.

In A the dog is the subject of the sentence, while in B the boy is the subject, and the dog has become the direct object of the action. In German, if a noun is the subject of a sentence it is in the nominative case. If it is the direct object, it is in the accusative case. Certain words in the sentence related to the noun change form according to the case to reflect their role. This is called declension.

To help you get used to this concept, we indicate the nominative case as subject (SU) and the accusative as direct object (DO) so that you can make the direct link with their role. Below are the declensions for the definite article in these two cases. Note that only the masculine singular changes.

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	der	die	das	die
DO	den	die	das	die

3.2 PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Personal pronouns can also decline according to case.

Nominative (SU)

ich I

du you (informal singular)

er he

sie she

es it

wir we

ihr you (informal plural)

sie they

Sie you (formal: sing. & pl.)

Accusative (DO)

mich me

dich you

ihn him

sie her

es it

uns us

euch you

sie them

Sie you

German also has different forms of 'you' for the informal, formal, singular and plural (see sections 7.5 and 13.3.)

3.3 USEFUL VERBS: 'TO BE', 'TO HAVE', AND 'TO MAKE'

As in many languages, some of the most common verbs are also irregular. This is the case of both **sein** (to be) and **haben** (to have), which you will be using frequently, so it's a good idea to learn their conjugations early on.

Here they are in the present tense. Note that in German, the present tense can be used for the simple present ('I talk') as well as the present continuous ('I am talking').

sein (to be)

ich bin I am

du bist you are (informal singular)

er/sie/es ist he/she/it is

wir sind we are

ihr seid you are (informal plural)

sie sind they are

Sie sind you are (formal: singular & plural)

(Note that there are different verb conjugations for the different forms of 'you'.)

haben (to have)

ich habe I have

du hast you have (informal singular)

er/sie/es hat he/she/it has

wir haben we have

ihr habt you have (informal plural)

sie haben they have

Sie haben you have (formal: singular & plural)

The following useful verb has a regular conjugation pattern.

machen (to make, to do)

ich mache I make, do

du machst you make, do (informal singular)

er/sie/es macht he/she/it makes, does

wir machen we make, do

ihr macht you make, do (informal plural)

sie machen they make, do

Sie machen you make, do (formal: singular & plural)

To form the present tense of regular verbs, the **-en** ending is removed from the infinitive (e.g. **machen**), and the following endings are added to the stem (e.g. **mach-**):

1st person singular (I)	-e
2nd person singular (you, informal)	-st
3rd person singular (he, she, it)	-t
	-et for stems ending in -d or -t
1st person plural (we)	-en
2nd person plural (you, informal)	-t
3rd person plural (they)	-en
Formal, sing. & pl. (you)	-en

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

zyn; bin; bist; ist; zint; zyd; **hah**-ben; **hah**-be; hast; haht; hapt; **mah**-ken; **mah**-ke; mahkst; mahkt; (Ex.) **lee**-ben; **kow**-fen; **mah**-ken; **hoh**-len; **roo**-fen; **ko**-men; **bring**-en; **tring**-ken

Exercise 1

A Learn the following verbs and then translate the sentences in **B**:

lieben	to love
kaufen	to buy
machen	to make, to do
holen	to fetch, to go and get
rufen	to call
kommen	to come
bringen	to bring
trinken	to drink

B Translate into German:

- 1 The father loves the landlady.
- 2 It is harmless!
- 3 He buys the newspaper.
- 4 She makes the beds.
- 5 The daughter fetches the car.
- 6 She calls the cat and the dog.
- 7 The cat and the dog come.
- 8 The landlady brings water.
- 9 Father, landlady, daughter, dog and cat drink the water.

VOCABULARY

Here are some new words that you'll discover in the conversation that follows. The plural form of nouns is given in brackets.

	Entschuldigung!	Excuse me!
	suchen	to look for
die	Touristeninformation	tourist information office
	liegen	to be (located)
	am	in/on the
der	Theaterplatz	Theatre Square
	Wie?	How?
	dahin	(to) there

	nicht	not
	leicht	easy
	Moment mal	just a moment
	gehen	to go
	über	over, across
die	Kreuzung (-en)	crossroads
	zweite	second
die	Straße (-n)	street
	rechts	on the right
der	Marktplatz (‘e)	marketplace
	sehen	to see
	dann	then
die	Kirche (-n)	church
das	Gasthaus (‘er)	inn
die	Rose (-n)	rose
	nehmen	to take
	zwischen	between
	eins	one
	zwei	two
	drei	three
	vierte	fourth
	immer geradeaus	straight ahead
	für	for
	etwa	about, approximately
	fünfhundert	five hundred
der	Meter (-)	metre
	finden	to find
	sofort	immediately
	furchtbar	terribly
	schwierig	difficult
	es macht nichts	it doesn’t matter
	um	at (time of day)
	dieser	this
die	Zeit (-en)	time
	sowieso	anyway
	geschlossen	closed

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

ent-**shool**-di-goonk; **zoo**-ken; dee too-**ris**-ten*in-foe-mah-tsiohn; **lee**-gen; ahm; deh-uh teh-**ah**-tuh-plahts; vee; dah-**hin**; niht; lyht; moh-**ment** mahl; **geh**-en; **ue**-buh; dee **kroy**-tsung; **tsvy**-te; dee **shtrah**-se, rehts; deh-uh **mahkt**-plahts; **zeh**-en; dahn; dee **kee**-uh-he, dahs **gahst**-hows; dee **roh**-ze; **neh**-men; **tsvi**-shen; yns; tsvy; dry; **fee**-uh-te; i-muh ge-**rah**-de*ows; fue-uh; **et**-vah; **fuenf**-hoon-duht; deh-uh **meh**-tuh; **fin**-den; **zoh**-**foert**; **foerht**-bah; **shvee**-rih; es mahkt nihts; oom; dee-zuh; dee tsyt; **zoh**-**vee**-**zoh**; ge-**shlo**-sen

3

CONVERSATION

An encounter in the street

- TOURISTIN **Entschuldigung! ... ich suche die Touristeninformation.**
- PASSANT **Ja ... die liegt am Theaterplatz.**
- TOURISTIN **Und wie komme ich dahin?**
- PASSANT **Das ist nicht so leicht ... Moment mal ... Sie gehen über die Kreuzung, zweite Straße rechts, über den Marktplatz. Sie sehen dann die Kirche und das Gasthaus Zur Rose. Sie nehmen die Straße zwischen Gasthaus und Kirche, dann ... eins ... zwei ... drei ... ja, dann die vierte Straße rechts, dann immer geradeaus für etwa fünfhundert Meter. Sie finden dann sofort den Theaterplatz.**
- TOURISTIN **O, das ist furchtbar schwierig!**
- PASSANT **Es macht nichts, die Touristeninformation ist um diese Zeit sowieso geschlossen.**

TRANSLATION

TOURIST Excuse me ... I'm looking for the tourist information office.

PASSER-BY Oh ... that's in Theatre Square.

TOURIST And how do I get there (lit. 'come to there')?

PASSER-BY That's not so easy ... Just a moment ... You go over the crossroads, second street on the right, across the marketplace. You'll then see ('You see then') the church and the Rose Inn. You take the street between the inn and the church ('between inn and church'), then ... one ... two ... three ... yes, then the fourth street on the right, then straight ahead for about five hundred metres. You'll then find ('You find then the') Theatre Square immediately.

TOURIST Oh, that's terribly difficult!

PASSER-BY It doesn't matter, the information office is closed at this time anyway.

Week 4

- the indefinite article ('a' / 'an') and its negative ('not a' / 'an') and their declensions for the gender and case of the noun
- numbers from zero to a million
- more on numbers: years and prices
- the dative case (used for an indirect object)
- some verbs used with indirect objects

4.1 THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE ('A' / 'AN')

4

The word for 'a/an' in German is the same as the word for 'one': **ein**. When **ein** is used before a noun (e.g. 'a cup' or 'one cup'), it has the following forms depending on the gender and case of the noun:

	m.	f.	n.	
SU	ein	eine	ein	(nominative)
DO	einen	eine	ein	(accusative)

It has no plural form. Sometimes a plural noun doesn't require an article ('we have friends here'), other times it might be preceded by words such as **einige** (some), **mehrere** (several), or **ein paar** (a few). These words are invariable – they only have one form.

Wir haben

[	Freunde	]	hier.
	einige Freunde		
	mehrere Freunde		
	ein paar Freunde		

The negative of **ein** is **kein**, which means 'not a/an/any' or 'no...'. This does have a plural form (e.g. 'no friends').

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	kein	keine	kein	keine
DO	keinen	keine	kein	keine

So to say 'I don't have any friends' in German, rather than making the verb negative, this would be **Ich habe keine Freunde**. The article **kein** is used constantly, as the

following examples show (as this usage is often quite different from English, the phrases in brackets give the literal meanings):

Wir trinken kein Bier.

We don't drink beer. ('We drink no beer.')

Ich habe keine Ahnung.

I don't have a clue. ('I have no idea.')

Kein Mensch glaubt so etwas.

No one would believe anything like that. ('No person believes such a thing.')

Sie hat Angst, aber er hat keine Angst.

She is afraid but he is not. ('She has fear but he has no fear.')

Er hat keinen Beruf.

He isn't trained for anything. ('He has no profession/trade.')

Wir sind keine Anfänger.

We aren't beginners. ('We are no beginners.')

Note that in German, the indefinite article **ein** is not used when giving someone's profession. And to say what someone doesn't do, **nicht** (not) usually precedes the profession:

Die Mutter ist Lehrerin.

The mother is a teacher.

Er ist nicht Zahnarzt, er ist Kinderarzt.

He's not a dentist, he's a paediatrician.

Also note that the nouns for professions in German usually have a masculine and feminine form:

Lehrer (male teacher), **Lehrerin** (female teacher),

Arzt (male doctor), **Ärztin** (female doctor).

Exercise 1

Translate the sentences into German.

bauen	to build
die Wohnung (-en)	flat, apartment
das Problem (-e)	problem
installieren	to install
das Wassersystem (-e)	water system
der Strom (-e)	electricity
der Elektriker (-) / die Elektrikerin (-nen)	electrician
die Katastrophe (-n)	catastrophe

- 1 They are buying a house and building flats [in it].
- 2 One flat doesn't have a kitchen.
- 3 That's a problem, and they are building a kitchen.
- 4 One flat doesn't have any water.
- 5 That's also a problem, but the father is installing a water system.
- 6 One flat doesn't have electricity.
- 7 That's no problem. The son is an electrician.
- 8 One flat has a kitchen, water, electricity, and some cupboards, but no windows.
- 9 That's not a problem, it's a catastrophe.

4

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

bow-en; dee **voh**-noong; dahs prob-**leh**m;
in-stah-**lee**-ren; dahs **vah**-suh-zues-**teh**m;
de-uh shtroh-m; de-uh*e-**lek**-tri-kuh,
dee*e-**lek**-tri-ke-rin; dee kah-tahs-**troh**-fe

4.2 NUMBERS

Let's start with the numbers from 0 to 10. **Null** is used mainly when reading out decimals or single digits (for example, in telephone numbers).

0	null	6	sechs
1	eins	7	sieben
2	zwei	8	acht
3	drei	9	neun
4	vier	10	zehn
5	fünf		

Let's continue to 20. The first syllable is always stressed.

11	elf
12	zwölf
13	dreizehn
14	vierzehn
15	fünfzehn
16	sechzehn (note that the -s of sechs is dropped)
17	siebzehn (note that the -en of sieben is dropped)
18	achtzehn
19	neunzehn
20	zwanzig

So far so good. In the numbers to 30, note how in German the units precede the tens and are joined to them by **und**. The first syllable is always stressed.

21	einundzwanzig
22	zweiundzwanzig
23	dreiundzwanzig
24	vierundzwanzig
25	fünfundzwanzig
26	sechszwanzig (because this means 'six-and-twenty' the -s of sechs is included)
27	siebenundzwanzig (the -en is included)
28	achtundzwanzig
29	neunundzwanzig
30	dreißig

Here are the numbers from 10 to 100 by tens.

- 10 zehn**
- 20 zwanzig**
- 30 dreißig**
- 40 vierzig**
- 50 fünfzig**
- 60 sechzig** (note that the **-s** is dropped)
- 70 siebzig** (the **-en** of **sieben** is dropped)
- 80 achtzig**
- 90 neunzig**
- 100 hundert**

The following examples show how units and tens are combined for the above numbers. For these isolated numbers (as they are not counted in sequence), the stress is always on the second-to-last syllable.

- 31 einunddreißig**
- 42 zweiundvierzig**
- 53 dreiundfünfzig**
- 64 vierundsechzig**
- 66 sechsundsechzig**
- 75 fünfundsiebzig**
- 77 siebenundsiebzig**
- 86 sechsundachtzig**
- 97 siebenundneunzig**

Beyond 100, any number below the millions is written as one word. There is hardly ever an **und** after the hundreds in German (never when numbers are counted in sequence). The units and tens appear in the reverse order to English, with **und** in between.

However long the number, a number spoken in isolation has the stress on the normally stressed syllable of its final component. Long numbers can look intimidating, but it's more manageable if you break them into units:

(300 **dreihundert**, 507 **fünfhundertsieben**,
629 **sechshundertneunundzwanzig**)

Practise saying these examples:

101	hundertheins (or, less usually) einhundertheins
212	zweihundertzwölf
323	dreihundertdreiundzwanzig
434	vierhundertvierunddreißig
545	fünfhundertfünfundvierzig
656	sechshundertsechsfünfzig
666	sechshundertsechsendsechzig
767	siebenhundertsiebenundsechzig
777	siebenhundertsiebenundsiebzig
878	achthundertachtundsiebzig
989	neunhundertneunundachtzig

Here is 100 to 1000 by hundreds:

100	(ein)hundert
200	zweihundert
300	dreihundert
400	vierhundert
500	fünfhundert
600	sechshundert
700	siebenhundert
800	achthundert
900	neunhundert
1000	tausend

A million is **eine Million (-en)**, so the figure 5,723,926 would be spoken: **fünf Millionen siebenhundertdrei- undzwanzigtausendneunhundertsechsfünfzig**. A number of more than four figures is separated in thousands by a thin space, not by a comma (e.g. 2 344). Note also (section 4.3) that a comma is used for the decimal point in German (e.g. 3,06).

Years before 2000 are designated, as in English, using only hundreds, so 1992 is **neunzehnhundertzweiund-neunzig**. However, 2005 is **zweitausendfünf**. The 2020s is **die zweitausendzwanziger Jahre**, but note that the 2000s is **die nuller Jahre**.

The ending **-er** is added on to the cardinal number in constructions such as **die zwanziger Jahre** (the '20s). This ending is invariable.

All the numbers can be used with nouns (e.g. **fünfzig Seiten** fifty pages) without any change in the ending. The sole exceptions are numbers ending in **-eins**:

A **Das Buch hat zweihundertundeine Seite.**

(The book has 201 pages.) *or*

B **Das Buch hat zweihundert(und)ein Seiten.**

First, the **-s** in **eins** is dropped before a noun. In A, the **-ein** has the f. sing. ending **-e** with a f. sing. noun. In B, the **-ein** has no ending, the **und** can be dropped, and the noun is plural. Either form is correct.

Cardinal numbers are usually followed by a plural noun, but there are common exceptions, such as units of currency (see section 4.3) and of measurement (see section 8.4).

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

nool, yns, tsvy, dry, fee-uh, fuenf, zeks, **zee**-ben, ahkt, noyn, tsehn; elf, tsvoelf, **dry**-tsehn, **fee**-uh-tsehn, **fuenf**-tsehn, **zeh**-tsehn, **zeep**-tsehn, **ahkt**-tsehn, **noyn**-tsehn, **tsvahn**-tsih; yn*oont-tsvahn-tsih, **tsvy***oont-tsvahn-tsih, ...; **dry**-sih, **fee**-uh-tsih, **fuenf**-tsih, **zeh**-tsih, **zeep**-tsih, **ahkt**-tsih, **noyn**-tsih, **hoon**-duht; hoon-duht***yns**; **tow**-zent; y-ne mi-li-**yohn**

4.3 PRICES

The basic unit of German currency is the **Euro** (m.), which is divided into 100 **Cent** (m.). Although often preceded by cardinal numbers, **Euro** and **Cent** are hardly ever found in the plural. Price tags are usually written, and the amounts spoken, as in the following examples.

written €0,55 <i>or 55 Cent</i>	spoken fünfundfünfzig Cent
€1,20	ein Euro zwanzig eins zwanzig (equally common) ein Euro und zwanzig Cent (less common)
€4,85	vier Euro fünfundachtzig vier fünfundachtzig vier Euro und fünfundachtzig Cent

Price tags are sometimes more explicit, for example:

<u>written</u> Kilo €4,80	<u>spoken</u> vier Euro achtzig das Kilo €4.80 per kilo
Pfd €2,40	zwei Euro vierzig das Pfund €2.40 per pound (the German Pfund = 500 grams)
Stück €3,00 Stck €3,00	das Stück drei Euro <i>or drei Euro das Stück</i> €3.00 for one item / €3.00 each

To ask how much things cost:

Was kostet das?
or Wie teuer ist das?
How much is that?

Was kosten die Kartoffeln?
or Wie teuer sind die Kartoffeln?
How much are the potatoes?

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

tsent; yn-oy-roh; dahs keelo; dahs pfoont; dahs shtuek

Exercise 2

- 1 Ein Buch kostet €12,80 (zwölf Euro achtzig).
Zwei Bücher kosten €25,60 (fünfundzwanzig Euro sechzig).

Now continue the pattern with the following, completing the sentences and giving the prices in figures and words:

- 2 Ein Brot kostet €2,50 (zwei Euro fünfzig).
Zwei ...
- 3 Eine Wurst kostet €1,50 (ein Euro fünfzig).
Zwei ...
- 4 Eine Uhr kostet €85,00 (fünfundachtzig Euro).
Zwei ...
- 5 Eine Zeitung kostet €1,75 (ein Euro fünfsiebzig).
Zwei ...
- 6 Ein Bett kostet €344,00 (dreihundert vierundvierzig Euro).
Zwei ...
- 7 Ein Schrank kostet €505,00 (fünfhundertfünf Euro).
Zwei ...
- 8 Ein Messer kostet €3,60 (drei Euro sechzig).
Zwei ...
- 9 Eine Rose kostet €2,15 (zwei Euro fünfzehn).
Zwei ...
- 10 Ein Auto kostet €18 000,00 (achtzehntausend Euro).
Zwei ...

4.4 THE DATIVE CASE (INDIRECT OBJECT)

In addition to the nominative case (for the subject), and the accusative case (for the direct object), there is a dative case (for an indirect object). In the sentence 'I am lending it to him', 'it' is the direct object, while 'him' is the indirect object – typically the recipient of the action.

In English, an indirect object is usually indicated with 'to' or 'for':

I am lending it to him.

I am lending it to my friend.

I am lending the book to my friend.

In German, this is indicated with specific case endings for words related to an indirect object (IO) (including definite and indefinite articles, pronouns, etc.).

(1) Definite and indefinite articles in the dative case

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
IO	dem	der	dem	den
IO	(k)einem	(k)einer	(k)einem	keinen

(2) Indirect object pronouns

singular	plural
mir (to/for) me	uns (to/for) us
dir (to/for) you (inf. sing.)	euch (to/for) you (inf. pl.)
ihm (to/for) him	ihnen (to/for) them
ihr (to/for) her	Ihnen (to/for) you (formal)
ihm (to/for) it	

The following table lists the declensions for all three cases for the definite and indefinite articles:

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	
SU	der	die	das	die
	(k)ein	(k)eine	(k)ein	keine

DO	den (k)einen	die (k)eine	das (k)ein	die keine
IO	dem (k)einem	der (k)einer	dem (k)einem	den keinen

Here are the declensions for the personal pronouns:

SU	DO	IO
ich I	mich me	mir (to) me
du you (inf. sing.)	dich you	dir (to) you
er he	ihn him	ihm (to) him
sie she	sie her	ihr (to) her
es it	es it	ihm (to) it
wir we	uns us	uns (to) us
ihr you (inf. pl.)	euch you	euch (to) you
sie they	sie them	ihnen (to) them
Sie you (formal)	Sie you	Ihnen (to) you

A tip: in the dative (IO) case, the m. and n. singular always ends with **-m**; the f. singular always ends with **-r**; and several of the plural forms end with **-en**.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

deh-uh, yn, kyn; dehn, y-nen, **ky**-nen; deh-m, y-nem, **ky**-nem; dee, y-ne, **ky**-ne; deh-uh, y-nuh, **ky**-nuh; dahs, yn, kyn; ... *ih*, *mi*h, mee-uh; doo, *di*h, dee-uh; e-uh, een, eem; zee, ee-uh; es, eem; vee-uh, oons; *oy*h; zee, **ee**-nen

4.5 VERBS USED WITH INDIRECT OBJECTS

Some verbs are used with both a direct object and an indirect object:

bringen	to bring (someone something)
geben	to give (someone something)
schenken	to give (someone something) as a present
wünschen	to wish (someone something)

There are also certain verbs in German that require the dative case if the object is human. So with the following verbs, the person (or pronoun) is an indirect object.

begegnen	to meet (someone)
helfen	to help (someone)
gefallen	to please (someone)
glauben	to believe (someone)
verzeihen	to forgive (someone)
raten	to advise (someone)

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

bring-en; **geh**-ben; **sheng**-ken; **vuen**-shen; be-**geh**-nen;
hel-fen; ge-**fah**-len; **glow**-ben; fuh-**tsy**-en; **rah**-ten

Exercise 3



Rewrite the following sentences, substituting the nouns in brackets for those that precede them and making the other changes needed. The words that have to be changed are in *italics*.

Ich bringe *meiner Mutter* (Vater) *eine Zeitung* (Buch).

Ich gebe *sie ihr* (i.e. Buch, Vater) in *der Küche* (Flur).

Ich schenke *meiner Schwester* (Bruder) *eine Katze* (Hund) und wünsche *ihr* einen guten Tag.

VOCABULARY

Read through this new vocabulary used in the following conversation. In the conversation, you'll notice that the present tense is often used to refer to the future.

heute Abend	this evening
eingeladen	invited (out)
man	one
netten	nice
die Dame (-n)	lady
rote	red

	bestimmt	definitely
	gut	fine
	Wie viele?	How many?
	sollen	to be supposed to, should
	Ach!	Oh!
	verheiratet	married
	vielleicht	perhaps
	nie	never
	Wieso denn?	Why is that?
	bedeuten	to mean
	gelbe	yellow
die	Nelke (-n)	carnation
	Bitte schön!	There you are! You're welcome!
	Viel Spaß!	Have a nice time!

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

hoy-te*ah-bent; yn-ge-lah-den; mahn; ne-ten;
 dee dah-me; roh-te; be-shtimt; goot; vee-fee-le;
 zo-len; ahk; fuh-hy-rah-tet; fee-lyht; nee;
 vee-zoh den; be-doy-ten; gel-be; dee nel-ke;
 bi-te shoen; feel shpahs

CONVERSATION

A problem of etiquette at the florist's

- KUNDE Ich bin heute Abend eingeladen. Was
schenkt man einer netten Dame?
- FLORISTIN Moment bitte ... Ich helfe Ihnen sofort.
Rote Rosen gefallen ihr bestimmt.
- KUNDE Wie teuer sind rote Rosen?
- FLORISTIN Sie kosten ein Euro fünfzig das Stück.
- KUNDE Gut, ich nehme Rosen.
- FLORISTIN Wie viele sollen es sein? ... fünf ...
sieben ... neun ...?

- KUNDE **Geben Sie mir fünf Stück bitte? ... Ach ja, bringe ich ihrem Mann auch etwas?**
- FLORISTIN **Was!? Die Dame ist verheiratet!?!? Rote Rosen gefallen ihr vielleicht, aber ihr Mann verzeiht Ihnen nie, glauben Sie mir.**
- KUNDE **Wieso denn?**
- FLORISTIN **Rote Rosen bedeuten Liebe. Ich rate Ihnen, schenken Sie ihr gelbe Nelken ... Bitte schön ... Ich wünsche Ihnen viel Spaß heute Abend!**

TRANSLATION

- CUSTOMER I've been (lit. 'I am') invited out this evening. What does one give a nice lady?
- FLORIST Just a moment, please ... I'll help you straight away. Red roses will definitely please her.
- CUSTOMER How much are red roses?
- FLORIST They cost one euro fifty each.
- CUSTOMER Fine, I'll take roses.
- FLORIST How many is it to be ('should it be')? ... five ... seven ... nine?
- CUSTOMER Will you give me five, please? ... Oh yes, shall I take something for her husband too?
- FLORIST What!? The lady is married!?!? Red roses will perhaps please her, but her husband will never forgive you, believe me!
- CUSTOMER Why is that?
- FLORIST Red roses mean love. I'd advise you to give her yellow carnations ... There you are ... Have a lovely evening!

Week 5

- asking questions and making requests
- question words such as 'Who?', 'When?', 'Why?'
- using **nicht** ('not') to make negative sentences
- the imperative (command form)
- adjectives and adverbs
- comparatives and superlatives (e.g. 'old', 'older', 'oldest')

5.1 ASKING QUESTIONS

(1) When the answer is expected to be **ja** (yes) or **nein** (no)

To ask a question with a 'yes' or 'no' answer, simply begin with the verb, immediately followed by the subject:

Ist er Elektriker?

Is he an electrician?

Kommt er heute?

Is he coming today?

Kommt er oft?

Does he come often?

Hat sie Geschwister?

Does she have (any) brothers and sisters?

Arbeiten sie?

Are they working?

(2) When the answer is expected to be a piece of information

To ask a question requiring particular information in the answer, start with the appropriate question word:

Was? What?

Wie? How?

Wo? Where?

Wer? Who?

Wen? Who(m)?

Wem? To/for whom?

Wann? When?

Warum? Why?

5

The verb follows the question word, with the subject after the verb (except when the subject is the question word itself, as is sometimes the case with **Wer?** and **Was?**, marked with an asterisk below):

Was kosten die Kartoffeln?

What do the potatoes cost?

Was macht das?

How much is that?

***Was kommt jetzt?**

What is coming now?

Wie fahren Sie?

How are you travelling? (i.e. by what means)

Wie heißt der Sohn?

What is the son's name? (lit. 'How is called the son?')

Wo wohnt die Freundin?

Where does the girlfriend live?

***Wer wohnt hier?**

Who lives here? (**wer** indicates a SU)

Wer ist der Besitzer?

Who is the owner?

Wen kennt der Junge?

Who does the boy know? (**wen** indicates a DO)

Wem bringt er die Blumen?

Who is he taking the flowers to? (**wem** indicates an IO)

Wann fahren wir?

When are we travelling? (i.e. when do we leave)

This list of question words is not exhaustive.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

ist * e-uh * e-**lek**-tri-kuh; komt * e-uh **hoy**-te; komt * e-uh * oft; haht zee ge-**shvis**-tuh; **ah**-by-ten zee; vahs; vee; voh; ve-uh; vehn; vehm; vahn; vah-**room**; vahs **kos**-ten dee kah-**to**-fel-n; vahs mahkt dahs; vahs komt yetst; vee **fah**-ren zee; vee hyst deh-uh zohn; voh vohnt dee **froyn**-din; ve-uh vohnt hee-uh; ve-uh * ist deh-uh be-**zit**-suh; vehn kent deh-uh **yoong**-e; vehm bringt * e-uh dee **bloo**-men; vahn **fah**-ren vee-uh

NOTES

(1) If the person you are asking does not know the answer, a typical response might be:

Ich weiß (es) nicht. I don't know.

The use of **nicht** is explained in section 5.2.

(2) Questions in German are often used to make polite requests. They may use a polite verb form like the English 'Would you ...?' (see section 12.4) or be in the present tense, which can sound a bit direct in English:

Geben Sie mir bitte die Zeitung?

Will you give me the newspaper, please?

(literally, 'Are you giving me the paper, please?')

Reichen Sie mir bitte den Zucker?

Will you pass the sugar, please?

(3) The phrase **Was für (ein)?** means 'What sort of (a)?':

Was für ein Auto haben Sie?

What sort of (a) car do you have?

Was für Blumen bringt er?

What sort of flowers does he bring?

Was für einen Teppich sucht sie?

What sort of (a) carpet is she looking for?

Was für ein Mensch ist er?

What sort of a person is he?

In **Was für ein?**, the **ein** has the same ending as in the hypothetical statement on which the question is based:

Sie haben ein Auto. Was für ein Auto haben Sie?

You have a car. What sort of a car do you have?

Sie sucht einen Teppich. Was für einen Teppich sucht sie?

She's looking for a carpet. What sort of a carpet is she looking for?

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

ih vys * es *niht*; **geh**-ben *zee mee-uh bi-te dee tsy-toong*;
ry-hen *zee bi-te dehn tsoo-kuh*; v^{ahs} fue-uh * yn *
ow-toh hah-ben *zee*; v^{ahs} fue-uh **bloo**-men bringt *
e-uh; v^{ahs} fue-uh * **y-nen te-pih zookt zee**; v^{ahs} fue-uh
* yn mensh * ist * e-uh; *zee hah*-ben * yn * **ow-toh**; v^{ahs}
fue-uh * yn * **ow-toh hah**-ben *zee*; *zee zookt* * **y-nen**
te-pih; v^{ahs} fue-uh * **y-nen te-pih zookt zee**

Exercise 1

Insert the correct question word from the column on the right in the following questions:



- | | |
|----------------------------|-------|
| 1 ... für ein Auto hat er? | Wen |
| 2 ... kommt er? | Wer |
| 3 ... besucht er? | Was |
| 4 ... wohnt die Freundin? | Wie |
| 5 ... ist sie? | Warum |
| 6 ... heißt sie? | Wann |
| 7 ... liebt er sie? | Wo |

5.2 FORMING NEGATIVE SENTENCES

In section 4.1 we saw how **kein** can be used before a noun to make a sentence negative. But this only works with a noun that can be preceded by an indefinite article (a/an/some/any). Otherwise, **nicht** (not) is used.

Remember that German has strict rules about word order: **nicht** often comes near the end of a sentence. It never comes between the subject and the verb:

Er schwimmt nicht immer. He doesn't always swim.
Wir kennen sie noch nicht. We don't know her yet.
Es funktioniert nicht gut. It isn't working well.

The same principle applies to questions:

Ist er nicht Elektriker? Isn't he an electrician?
Kommt er nicht heute? Isn't he coming today?
Kommt er nicht oft? Doesn't he come often?
Warum arbeiten sie nicht? Why aren't they working?

but

Hat sie keine Geschwister?

Doesn't she have (any) brothers or sisters?

5.3 THE IMPERATIVE (COMMAND FORM)

The formal imperative (the verb form used for requests or commands) is simple: it's just the infinitive (e.g. 'to come') followed directly by the pronoun **Sie**:
Kommen Sie sofort! Come at once!

This may sound blunt in English, but it's polite in German and can be further softened by adding **bitte** (please):
Geben Sie mir bitte die Zeitung!
Please give me the paper!

The informal singular (**du** form) is the verb stem plus **-e**, but the **-e** is often dropped in informal usage (and no pronoun is used): **Komm(e)!** Come! **Gib!** Give!

Note that the formal imperative is identical to the formal present tense, so by adding a question mark instead of an exclamation point, the command is turned into a request:

Geben Sie mir bitte die Zeitung?

However, **sein** (to be) has an irregular imperative:

Seien Sie so nett und bringen Sie mir die Zeitung!

Be so kind and bring me the paper.

VOCABULARY 1

Bitte schön ...?	Can I help you?
der (Stadt)führer (-)	(town) guide
die (Stadt)führerin (-nen)	
fragen	to ask
der Chef (-s) /	boss, manager
die Chefin (-nen)	
suchen	to look for
so etwas	such a thing
sicher	certainly
drüben	over there
gucken	to have a look
(pronounced koo-ken)	
dort	there
verrückt	crazy
von	of
natürlich	of course
brauchen	to need
hier	here
kennen	to know
die Stadt (-e)	town

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

bi-te shoen; deh-uh **fue**-ruh/-in; deh-uh shtaht-fue-ruh/-in, frah-gen; deh-uh shef/-in; zoo-ken;
 zoh * **et**-vahs; **zi**-huh, **dru**e-ben; **koo**-ken; doh-uht;
 fuh-ruekt; fon; na-tueuh-lih; **brow**-ken; hee-uh,
ke-nen; dee shtaht

Exercise 2

Translate this encounter into German, checking any new words in the vocabulary list. Only translate what the speakers say. Compare your translation with the one in the answer key.

A foreign visitor (Fremde) tries to buy a town guide in a bookshop in Bunsenheim

ASSISTANT Can I help you?

VISITOR Hello. Do you have a guide?

ASSISTANT What sort of a guide?

VISITOR A town guide.

ASSISTANT I don't know. Please ask the manager (m.).

VISITOR (to Manager) Hello. I'm looking for a town guide. Do you have such a thing?

MANAGER Yes, certainly. The town guides are over there. Have a look there.

(Ten minutes later)

VISITOR It's crazy. I find town guides of Frankfurt, Gießen, Marburg, and Kassel, but I can't (don't) find a town guide of Bunsenheim.

MANAGER Of course not. Why do we need town guides of Bunsenheim? We live here and know the town!

5

5.4 ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

An adjective is a word that describes a noun. It can either directly precede a noun ('*fine* weather') or follow it after the verb 'to be' (**sein**) ('the weather is *fine*').

An adverb is used to describe a verb ('he stumbled *badly*') or other words to give information about manner, time, degree, circumstance, etc. In English, an adverb is often formed by adding -ly, but in German the same word can be used as either an adjective or adverb:

Das Wetter ist schlecht. The weather is bad.

Das Kind singt schlecht. The child sings badly.

We'll look at adjectives preceding nouns in section 7.3.

Adjectives and adverbs are often preceded by words that qualify them, such as:

sehr	very
zu	too
so	so
ziemlich	fairly, rather, pretty
etwas	rather, somewhat
nicht	not
nicht so	not so
gar nicht	not at all

Der Chef ist gar nicht höflich.

The boss isn't at all polite.

Das Kind trinkt die Milch ziemlich schnell.

The child drinks the milk pretty quickly.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

zeh-uh; tsoo; zoh; tseem-lih; **et**-vahs; ni/ht; ni/ht zoh;
gah ni/ht

Adjectives and adverbs share the same methods of making comparisons.

(1) Comparatives ('more', 'less', etc.)

To make comparatives, add **-er** to the adjective or adverb and, if you need 'than', use **als**:

Das Wetter ist heute schlechter als gestern.

The weather is worse today than yesterday.

Das Kind singt schlecht, aber die Mutter singt schlechter.

The child sings badly, but the mother sings worse.

With some adjectives and adverbs, the sound of the vowel changes when the **-er** ending is added:

alt	old	älter	older
arm	poor	ärmer	poorer

groß	big	größer	bigger
hart	hard	härter	harder
jung	young	jünger	younger
kalt	cold	kälter	colder
klug	clever	klüger	cleverer
krank	ill	kränker	more ill
kurz	short	kürzer	shorter
lang	long	länger	longer
oft	often	öfter	more often
schwach	weak	schwächer	weaker
stark	strong	stärker	stronger
warm	warm	wärmer	warmer

These vowel changes also occur in the superlative.

(2) Superlatives ('most', 'least', etc.)

To make superlatives, put **am** before the adjective or adverb and add **-(e)sten** to the word itself:

Das Wetter war vorgestern am schlechtesten.

The weather was worst (of all) the day before yesterday.

Der Vater singt am schlechtesten.

The father sings worst (of all).

Das Wetter war vorvorgestern am schönsten.

The weather was nicest (of all) three days ago (literally: 'the day before the day before yesterday').

Die Kusine singt am schönsten.

The cousin (f.) sings the most beautifully (of all).

The ending is usually **-esten** rather than **-sten** when the base word ends in **-s**, **ss**, **-ß** (but not **groß** → **am größten**), **-d**, **-t**, or **-z**.

fies	nasty	am fiesesten	nastiest
bläss	pale	am blässesten	palest
heiß	hot	am heißesten	hottest
gesund	healthy	am gesundesten	healthiest
hart	hard	am härtesten	hardest
schwarz	black	am schwärzesten	blackest

However, when a superlative adjective precedes the noun (as in 'the finest weather'), **am** is not used, and the ending may be different from **-en** (see section 7.3).

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

ahlt, **el**-tuh; *ahm*, **eh**-muh; grohs, **groe**-suh; haht, **heh**-tuh; yoong, **yueng**-uh; kahlt, **kel**-tuh; klook, **klue**-guh; **krahnk**, kreng-kuh; koots, **kuet**-suh; **lahng**, leng-uh; oft, **oef**-tuh; shvahk, **shve**-huh; shtahk, **steh**-kuh; *vahm*, **veh**-muh

(3) Like English, German has a few adjectives that don't follow the usual pattern:

gut	good	besser	better	am besten	best
viel	much	mehr	more	am meisten	most
hoch	high	höher	higher	am höchsten	highest
nahe	near	näher	nearer	am nächsten	nearest

(4) The construction for 'as ... as' is **so ... wie**

Das Haus ist so klein wie ein Schuppen.

The house is as small as a shed.

Ich komme so schnell wie möglich.

I'll come as quickly as possible.

'just as ... as' is **ebenso ... wie**:

Das Schlafzimmer ist ebenso groß wie das Wohnzimmer.

The bedroom is just as big as the living room.

Der Vetter singt ebenso schön wie die Kusine.

The male cousin sings just as beautifully as the female cousin.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

goot, **be**-suh, ahm **bes**-ten; feel, meh-uh, **ahm** mys-ten;
 hohk, **hoe**-uh, ahm **hoehs**-ten; **nah**-e, **ne**-uh, ahm
nehs-ten; zoh ... vee; **eh**-ben-zoh ... vee

Exercise 3

- 1 Meine Mutter ist alt, aber mein Vater ist älter.
 Complete the following sentences in the same way.
- 2 Mein Bruder ist groß, aber meine Schwester ist ...
- 3 Die Frau ist jung, aber die Wirtin ist ...
- 4 Der Sohn ist klug, aber die Tochter ist ...
- 5 Das Zimmer ist warm, aber das Bett ist ...
- 6 Die gelbe Nelke ist lang, aber die rote Rose ist ...
- 7 Die Frau ist nett, aber der Mann ist ...

5

VOCABULARY 2

Read through these new words that are used in the conversation that follows:

der Hausbesitzer (-) /	houseowner
die Hausbesitzerin (-nen)	
dieser/diese/dieses	this (m./f./n.)
das Wohnzimmer (-)	living room
das Schlafzimmer (-)	bedroom
der Mieter (-) /	tenant
die Mieterin (-nen)	
der Flur (-e)	hall
dunk(e)l*	dark
die Straße (-n)	street
laut	noisy
eigentlich	really, actually
oben	upstairs
hell	light, bright

der Raum (-e)	room, space
bestimmt	definitely
breit	wide
unten	downstairs
die Decke (-n)	ceiling
niedrig	low
winzig	tiny
gegenüber	opposite
die Aussicht (-en)	view
wunderschön	glorious, splendid
der Garten (-)	garden
liegen	to lie (be horizontal)
nämlich	after all, in fact
hinten	at the back, rear
ruhig	quiet
vorn	at the front
nehmen	to take
übrigens	by the way
der Monat (-e)	month
teu(e)r*	expensive
jetzt	now, at present
zahlen	to pay

* The letter in brackets disappears when another syllable such as **-er** is added to the adjective/adverb.

IMITATED PRONUNCIATION

dee **hows**-be-zit-se/-rin; dees; dahs **vohn**-tsi-muh;
dahs **shlahf**-tsi-muh; deh-uh **mee**-tuh/-rin; deh-uh
floo-uh; **doong**-kel; dee **shtrah**-se; lowt; y-gent-lih;
oh-ben; hel; deh-uh rowm; be-**shtimt**; bryt; **oon**-ten;
dee **de**-ke; **nee**-drih; **win**-tsih; geh-gen*ue-buh;
dee **ows**-ziht; **voon**-duh-shoen; deh-uh **gah**-ten;
lee-gen; **nem**-lih; **hin**-ten; **roo**-ih; fohn; **neh**-men;
ueb-ri-gens; deh-uh **moh**-naht; **toy**-uh; yetst;
tsah-len

CONVERSATION

A houseowner shows three vacant flats to a prospective tenant

In the ground floor flat:

HAUSBESITZERIN **Diese Wohnung ist schön groß, zwei Wohnzimmer, vier Schlafzimmer, zwei Toiletten ...**

MIETER **Der Flur ist zu dunkel, und die Straße ist ziemlich laut. Diese Wohnung ist mir eigentlich zu groß. Ich brauche keine vier Schlafzimmer, eigentlich nur zwei ... Sind die Wohnungen oben kleiner?**

HAUSBESITZERIN **Ja. Sie sind auch etwas heller als diese.**

In the first floor flat at the front:

HAUSBESITZERIN **Diese Räume gefallen Ihnen bestimmt ... nur ein Wohnzimmer, aber breiter und länger als das Wohnzimmer unten.**

MIETER **Ja, schön, aber die Decke ist niedriger als unten. Die drei Schlafzimmer sind mir zu winzig, und es ist ebenso laut hier wie unten.**

In the first floor flat at the rear:

HAUSBESITZERIN **Diese Wohnung ist am schönsten. Hier sind nur zwei Schlafzimmer. Sie sind aber etwas größer als die Schlafzimmer gegenüber. Die Aussicht ist wunderschön, der Garten liegt nämlich hinten.**

MIETER **Ja, und diese Wohnung ist auch viel ruhiger als die Wohnungen vorn. Ja, ich nehme sie ... Wie hoch ist übrigens die Miete?**

5

HAUSBESITZERIN **Neunhundertfünfzig Euro pro Monat.**
 MIETER **Was!!?? Nein, das ist mir zu teuer.**
Das ist viel mehr, als ich jetzt zahle.

TRANSLATION

In the ground floor flat:

HOUSEOWNER This flat is beautifully spacious, two living rooms, four bedrooms, two toilets ...
 TENANT The hall is too dark, and the street is rather noisy. This flat is really too large for me. I don't need four bedrooms, really only two ... Are the flats upstairs smaller?
 HOUSEOWNER Yes. They're somewhat lighter than this one, too.

In the first floor flat at the front:

HOUSEOWNER You'll definitely like these rooms ... only one living room, but it's wider and longer than the living room downstairs.
 TENANT Yes, nice, but the ceiling is lower than downstairs. The three bedrooms are too tiny for me, and it's just as noisy here as downstairs.

In the first floor flat at the rear:

HOUSEOWNER This flat is the nicest of all. Here there are only two bedrooms. But they're somewhat larger than the bedrooms opposite. The view is glorious. The garden's at the back, after all.
 TENANT Yes, and this flat is quieter than the flats at the front too. Yes, I'll take it ... By the way, how much is the rent?
 HOUSEOWNER Nine hundred and fifty euros a month.
 TENANT What!!?? No, that's too expensive for me. That's much more than I'm paying now.

Week 6

- prepositions ('in', 'by', 'of', etc.)
- how prepositions affect the case of the following noun or pronoun
- the expression **es gibt** ('there is' / 'there are')

6.1 PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions are words or groups of words that usually precede a noun or pronoun (hence the name 'preposition') to indicate its relationship with other words in the sentence. They can show information such as direction, time, location, agent, spatial relationship, etc.:

going *into* the house
stolen *by* a thief
a letter *from* you
fond *of* her mother
insist *on* payment

Because different prepositions can indicate different functions of the following noun or pronoun, this has an impact on the grammatical case. The nouns following some prepositions are direct objects, so take the accusative, some are indirect objects, so take the dative, and some take either, depending on the meaning.

The most common German prepositions are listed below, grouped according to the case(s) they require. Although the primary translations are shown, note that the meaning of prepositions depends on context. You'll become familiar with how they are used as you come across them in various situations.

(1) Prepositions followed by a DO (accusative case)

durch	through, by, by means of
für	for
gegen	against, towards
ohne	without
um	around, at (time of day)

Note these three contracted forms that are frequently found when followed by **das**:

durchs (= durch das) Fenster	through the window
fürs (= für das) Theater	for the theatre
ums (= um das) Feuer	around the fire

(2) Prepositions followed by an IO (dative case)

aus	out of, from
bei	with, at (so-and-so's house), near, in (such-and-such conditions or weather), during, in the process/course of
mit	with
nach	to (certain locations, including one's own house: nach Hause), after (time), according to
seit	since, for (period of time up to now)
von	from (place and time), by (indicating agency or authorship), of (possession)
zu	to (certain locations), at (e.g. at home: zu Hause)

Note these contracted forms when followed by **dem**:

beim (= bei dem) Gewitter	in/during the thunderstorm
vom (= von dem) Dach	from the roof
zum (= zu dem) Arzt	to the doctor

and when followed by **der** (f. sing. IO):

zur (= zu der) Seite	to the side, aside
-----------------------------	--------------------

(3) Prepositions followed by either a DO or an IO

If the context indicates a change of location or condition, these prepositions are followed by a DO (accusative); otherwise they are followed by an IO (dative).

an	DO on to (the side of); up to (the edge of)	IO at, by, on (the side of a non-horizontal surface); on (with days and dates)
auf	on to (the top of a horizontal surface)	on (the top of a horizontal surface)
hinter	(to) behind	behind
in	into	in (spatial and temporal, though with years need im Jahre , e.g. im Jahre 2022); inside, within
neben	(to) next to, (to) alongside	next to, alongside, along with
über	across, over (i.e. from one side to the other), via	above, over (i.e. on top of)
unter	(to) underneath, (to) below, under (from one side to the other)	below, underneath, under
vor	(to) in front of, (to) before	in front of, before; (in past time contexts) ago
zwischen	(to) in between	between

Note these contracted forms when followed by **das**:

ans (= an das) Feuer	up to the fire
aufs (= auf das) Wasser	onto the water
ins (= in das) Netz	into the net
vors (= vor das) Auto	in front of the car

and when followed by **dem**:

am (= an dem) Montag	on Monday
im (= in dem) Schnee	in the snow

The following sentences illustrate the principle underlying the different meanings conveyed by a DO or IO:

Kai geht an den Schrank, Lena steht am Schrank.

Kai goes to the wardrobe. Lena stands by the wardrobe.

Er legt die Zeitung auf den Tisch, sie liegt jetzt auf dem Tisch.

He puts (lays) the newspaper on the table. It's now (lying) on the table.

Kai springt hinter den Stuhl, Lena ist schon hinter dem Stuhl.

Kai jumps behind the chair. Lena is already behind the chair.

Kai geht jetzt in den Garten, Lena singt im Garten.

Kai now goes into the garden. Lena is singing in the garden.

Die Katze geht neben den Stuhl, der Hund liegt schon neben dem Stuhl.

The cat goes next to the chair. The dog is already lying next to the chair.

Die Katze springt über den Tisch, die Uhr hängt über dem Tisch.

The cat jumps over the table. The clock is hanging above the table.

Der Hund kriecht unter den Tisch, die Zeitung liegt unter dem Tisch.

The dog creeps under the table. The newspaper is (lies) under the table.

(4) The preposition **bis** can be used in two ways

When expressing time/numbers, it means 'until', 'up to', 'by' and is followed by a DO (accusative case):

bis nächstes Jahr until next year

bis nächsten Montag until next Monday

In other expressions, it means 'up to', 'as far as'. In this usage **bis** cannot stand alone, except before place names. It must be followed by another preposition such as **an**, **auf**, or **in**. The case of the noun or pronoun is determined by this second preposition.

The following example shows both usages:

Oskar kommt nur bis Bunsenheim, findet ein Gasthaus, geht bis an die Tür, wartet bis fünf Uhr, zählt bis fünfzig, kommt dann bis in die Gaststube, aber: keiner ist da!

Oskar only gets as far as Bunsenheim, finds an inn, goes up to the door, waits until five o'clock, counts up to fifty, then gets as far as the lounge, but – no one is there!

(5) The preposition **gegenüber** means 'opposite', 'towards', 'compared to'

The position of **gegenüber** is similar to English usage. The nouns it relates to are IOs (dative case):

Die Kirche steht am Marktplatz gegenüber dem Gasthaus Zur Rose, und Sie finden das Theater am Theaterplatz gegenüber der Touristeninformation.

The church is on the marketplace opposite the Rose Inn, and you'll find the theatre on Theatre Square opposite the tourist information office.

VOCABULARY 1

Read through these new words before you do the following exercises. We've stopped including the imitated pronunciation, as you should be getting familiar with this now, but keep listening to the audio!

der Verbrecher (-) /	criminal
die Verbrecherin (-nen)	
der Pinsel (-)	paintbrush
die Palette (-n)	palette
die Hand (‘e)	hand
das Bild (-er)	picture
die Sache (-n)	thing
die Tischdecke (-n)	tablecloth
das Brot (-e)	loaf of bread
das Glas (‘er)	glass
die Flasche (-n)	bottle
der Korken (-)	cork
das Etikett (-en)	label
wichtig	important
die Feile (-n)	file
der Einbrecher (-) /	burglar, intruder
die Einbrecherin (-nen)	
die Haustür (-en)	front door
klopfen	to knock
niemand, keiner	no one
gucken	to peep
finden	to find
das Nummernschild (-er)	number plate, license plate
die Garage (-n)	garage
zurück	back
stecken	to put (inside or between)
der Rahmen (-)	frame
öffnen	to open
die Treppe (-n)	stairs (i.e. staircase)
sitzen	to sit
das Skelett (-e)	skeleton
die Axt (‘e)	axe

Exercise 1

The story that follows describes a prisoner painting a picture of objects on a table. On the tablecloth is a loaf of bread cut open to reveal a file that has been inserted into it. Next to the loaf is a glass of wine and behind it, a wine bottle. Complete the story by inserting prepositions in the gaps marked (P) and putting the right case endings on the articles **d-** and **ein-**. Here are the prepositions, listed in the order they are required:

mit, in, vor, auf, auf, neben, hinter, mit, auf, für, in
Der Verbrecher steht (P) ein- Pinsel und ein- Palette
(P) d- Hand (P) ein- Bild. (P) d- Bild sind
mehrere Sachen. (P) ein- Tischdecke liegt ein Brot.
(P) d- Brot ist ein Glas, und (P) d- Brot ist eine
Flasche (P) ein- Korken. (P) d- Flasche ist ein
Etikett. Was ist aber (P) d- Verbrecher am
wichtigsten? Die Feile (P) d- Brot natürlich!

6

Exercise 2

Translate the following sentences into German, using the vocabulary list on the opposite page. The appropriate prepositions are indicated at the end of each sentence. (The English words in brackets are just there to help with the meaning; you don't have to translate them.)

The intruder goes up to the front door. (**bis an**)

He knocks on the door. (**an**)

No one comes to the door. (**zu**)

He goes around the house and peeps through the windows. (**um, durch**)

He finds a car without (a) number plate between the house and the garage. (**ohne, zwischen**)

He goes back to the front door. (**an**)

He pushes a file between the door and the frame. (**zwischen**)

He opens the door with the file and goes into the hall. (**mit, in**)

Opposite him on the stairs sits a skeleton with an axe in its ('the') hand! (**gegenüber, auf, mit, in**)

6.2 THE EXPRESSION **ES GIBT** ('THERE IS', 'THERE ARE')

To express the idea that something exists (or not) or is available (or not) we use 'there is/are' in English. In this frequently used expression, the verb conjugates according to whether what's being talked about is singular or plural or whether the time frame is the present, past, future, etc.:

There is a mouse in the kitchen.

There are foxes by the river.

There was cake at the party.

There will be pizza for lunch.

In German the equivalent of 'there is/are' is **es gibt** (from **geben**, 'to give': note that in this irregular verb the vowel in the verb stem changes in this third-person singular form). In this impersonal expression, **es** (it) is the subject, so what is being talked about is a DO (requiring the accusative case):

Es gibt heute einen Film im Fernsehen.

There's a film on television today.

Gibt es keinen Kuchen mehr?

Is there no more cake?

Es gibt mehrere Fehler in dem Brief.

There are several mistakes in the letter.

Es gibt einige Ausländer im Hotel.

There are some foreigners at the hotel.

Es gibt jetzt Abendbrot!

Now we're going to have dinner! ('There is dinner now.')

As you see in these examples, **es gibt** is used for both singular and plural.

The question **Was gibt es?** (usually spoken **Was gibt's?**) means 'What is there?' (e.g. for a meal, available in a shop, on television, etc.).

VOCABULARY 2

der	Hotelgast (-e)	hotel guest
das	Fernsehen	television
	im Fernsehen	on television
	heute Abend	this evening
der	Kellner (-) /	waiter / waitress
	die Kellnerin (-nen)	
die	Fernsehzeitung (-en)	TV magazine
die	Woche (-n)	week
	diese Woche	this week
die	Tageszeitung (-en)	daily newspaper
	hier	here
	leider	unfortunately
	gestern	yesterday

Exercise 3

Translate the following short conversation into German, using the words in the vocabulary list above.

In the lounge of a hotel

HOTEL GUEST What is there on television this evening?

WAITER I don't know.

HOTEL GUEST Look in the TV magazine, please.

(**in** + DO)

WAITER There is no TV magazine this week.

HOTEL GUEST Is there a daily paper?

WAITER Yes, here is a daily paper ... but unfortunately it is from yesterday. (**von**)

6

Week 7

- words with the same declensions as **der, die, das**, including the demonstrative pronouns 'this' and 'that'
- the possessive adjectives 'my', 'your', etc. (which have the same declensions as **ein**)
- endings added to adjectives when they precede a noun
- ordinal numbers ('first', 'second', etc.) and fractions
- the informal **du** for addressing someone you're on familiar terms with
- word order in a simple German sentence

7.1 WORDS WITH THE SAME DECLENSIONS AS DER, DIE, DAS

There are six other words that decline in the same way as **der, die, das**, as they qualify the following noun in a similar way. This means their ending depends on the gender, number, and case of the noun.

The stem for each word is listed below: see the table on the next page for the endings in each context.

dies-	this, these (<i>sometimes</i> that, those)
jed-	each, every, any
welch- ?/!	which?, what?, what (a)!
jen-	that, those
solch-	such
manch-	quite a few, a fair number of

(1) The usual way to say 'that' is **der, die**, or **das** spoken with emphasis, or **dies-**. The pronoun **jen-** is not used often, unless paired with **dies-**: for example, in the expression **jen- , dies-** (the former, the latter).

(2) In the singular, **solch-** and **manch-** have the alternatives **solch ein** and **manch ein**: in that case, only the **ein** takes endings. To convey the meaning of **solch ein**, there is also the option **ein solch-** (endings as in section 7.3), and the frequently used **so ein**.

(3) manch- has no exact equivalent in English. It means more than 'some' and fewer than 'many'. Whether singular or plural in form, it is plural in meaning.

Here is a summary of the different endings, using **dies-** as a model:

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	dieser	diese	dieses*	diese
DO	diesen	diese	dieses*	diese
IO	diesem	dieser	diesem	diesen

*The neuter ending **-as** in **das** is replaced by **-es** in all six of these words.

And here are some examples in context:

dies- **Kennen Sie dieses Buch aus der Hugo-Reihe?**

Do you know this book from the Hugo series?

jed- **Jedes Kind bekommt ein Ei.**

Each/every child will get an egg.

Ich bin für jeden Vorschlag offen.

I am open to any suggestion.

welch- ?/! **Auf welchen Bus warten Sie?**

Which bus are you waiting for?

Welchen Druck hat der Reifen?

What pressure does the tyre have?

jen- **Der Film stammt aus jener Zeit vor dem 1. Weltkrieg.**

The film comes from that period before World War I.

Wir sprechen oft über dieses und jenes.

We often talk about this and that.

- solch-** **Er hat solche Schwierigkeiten mit seinem Vater.**
 He has such difficulties with his father.
Wir haben solches Glück mit dem Wetter.
 We're having such luck with the weather.
- manch-** **Mancher Polizist fährt selbst zu schnell.**
 Quite a few policemen drive too fast themselves.

All six of these words can also be used on their own, with a noun being understood from the context:

Ich trinke aus diesem Glas. Trinken Sie aus diesem?
 I'll drink from this glass. Will you drink from this one?
 (indicating the glass)

jeder (DO **jeden**, IO **jedem**) on its own means 'everyone', just as **keiner** (DO **keinen**, IO **keinem**) on its own means 'no one', 'nobody'.

7.2 POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

The possessive adjectives ('my', 'your', 'his', 'her', etc.) decline following the pattern of the indefinite article **ein**. When they are used with a masculine singular noun that is the subject (nominative case), they are:

mein my
dein your (informal sing.)
sein his
ihr her
sein its
unser our
euer your (informal pl.)
ihr their
Ihr your (formal: sing. & pl.)

An important thing to keep in mind is that the form of the possessive adjective needs to agree with the gender, number, and case of the noun it precedes – i.e. what is possessed: for example, **unser Freund** (m.), but **unsere Freundin** (f.) (in the nominative case).

Below are the different endings of the possessive adjectives, using **unser** and **Ihr** as examples:

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	unser	unsere	unser	unsere
DO	unseren	unsere	unser	unsere
IO	unserem	unserer	unserem	unseren

(Don't mistake the **-er** in the stem of **unser** for a declension ending: here, it's part of the word!)

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	Ihr	Ihre	Ihr	Ihre
DO	Ihren	Ihre	Ihr	Ihre
IO	Ihrem	Ihrer	Ihrem	Ihren

All these possessive adjectives can also be used on their own (without a noun) as possessive pronouns meaning 'mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs'.

The endings are the same as in the tables above, except that when used as a pronoun the masculine singular nominative (SU) adds **-er**, and the neuter singular nominative (SU) and accusative (DO) add **-s**:

Leihen Sie mir bitte Ihren Bleistift. Meiner ist weg.

Lend me your pencil, please. Mine has disappeared (literally: 'is away').

Mein Fahrrad ist fünf Jahre alt. Wie alt ist Ihr?

My bicycle is five years old. How old is yours?

Exercise 1

- 1 Geht er ohne seine Freundin ins Theater?
Nein, er geht mit seiner Freundin ins Theater.
Complete the following sentences in the same way.
- 2 Ist sie ohne ihre Schwester bei Müllers eingeladen?
Nein, ...
- 3 Kommt der Vater mit unserem Geschenk für die Mutter?
Nein, ...
- 4 Esse ich den Kuchen ohne eine Tasse Kaffee?
Nein, ...
- 5 Geht er ohne seinen Stadtführer durch Frankfurt?
Nein, ...
- 6 Mache ich das Abendbrot mit meiner Tochter?
Nein, ...
- 7 Geht sie mit ihrem Bruder zur Tante?
Nein, ...
- 8 Kaufen wir die Wurst mit einer Cola?
Nein, ...

7

7.3 ADJECTIVES BEFORE NOUNS



As we've seen, predicate adjectives (used after a verb such as **sein**) do not decline (see section 5.4). However, attributive adjectives (which directly precede the noun) do change form.

Which endings they take depends on two things: (a) the gender, number, and case of the noun they modify, and (b) whether they are preceded by an article or not. The following three rules deal with (b).

(1) Adjectives after a definite article, demonstrative or the other words in section 7.1 (**der, dieser**, etc.)

If the article unequivocally shows the gender and case of the noun, the adjective simply takes an **-en** or **-e** ending.

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	der arme Mann	die arme Frau	das arme Kind	die armen Leute
DO	den armen Mann	die arme Frau	das arme Kind	die armen Leute
IO	dem armen Mann	der armen Frau	dem armen Kind	den armen Leuten*

*Plural nouns in the dative (IO) case always have **-n** added to the plural form unless the plural already ends in **-n** or is a plural loanword such as **Autos**.

Here is a summary of the endings:

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	-e	-e	-e	-en
DO	-en	-e	-e	-en
IO	-en	-en	-en	-en

(2) Adjectives after an indefinite article or possessive adjective (**ein**, **kein**, **mein**, etc.)

These adjectives decline just like those preceded by a definite article. The only exceptions are the nominative (SU) singular (m., f., n.) and the accusative (DO) singular (f., n.): in these cases it takes the same endings as the definite article (**der**, **die**, **das**):

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	ihr armer Mann	seine arme Frau	ihr armes Kind	ihre armen Kinder
DO	ihren armen Mann	seine arme Frau	ihr armes Kind	ihre armen Kinder
IO	ihrem armen Mann	seiner armen Frau	ihrem armen Kind	ihren armen Kindern

Here is a summary of the endings:

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	-er	-e	-es	-en
DO	-en	-e	-es	-en
IO	-en	-en	-en	-en

(3) Unpreceded adjectives

In cases where no article, demonstrative, possessive, etc. is used, the adjective must decline like the definite article (see section 7.1):

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	kalter	kalte	kaltes	kalte
	Wein	Limonade	Bier	Getränke
DO	kalten	kalte	kaltes	kalte
	Wein	Limonade	Bier	Getränke
IO	kaltem	kalter	kaltem	kalten
	Wein	Limonade	Bier	Getränken

Here is a summary of the endings for unpreceded adjectives:

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
SU	-er	-e	-es	-e
DO	-en	-e	-es	-e
IO	-em	-er	-em	-en

The principle behind the adjective endings for contexts (2) and (3) is that the adjective needs to carry the marker for case and gender if the preceding word does not. So in context (2), **ein** does not show the **-r** ending in the m. sing. (SU) or the **-s** in the n. sing. (SU/DO). Thus the adjective adds them. In (3), there is no preceding article, so the adjective has to take the endings (except that the n. sing. **das** (SU/DO) becomes **-es** (see section 7.1).

7.4 ORDINAL NUMBERS AND FRACTIONS

(1) The ordinal numbers ('first', 'second', 'third', etc.) are formed as follows:

- 1st: **erst**.

- 2nd to 19th:

Add a **-t** to the cardinal number (section 4.2): **zweit** (second), **neunt** (ninth), **achtzehnt** (eighteenth), etc.

Exceptions:

3rd **dritt** (-ei- becomes -i-)

7th **siebt** (**sieben** loses the -en)

8th **acht** (**acht** does not add another -t)

- 20th onwards:

Add **-st** to the cardinal number: **fünfunddreißigst** (thirty-fifth), **hundertst** (hundredth), and **tausendst** (thousandth).

Ordinal numbers are mostly used as adjectives before nouns, so they take the endings described in section 7.3:

Die fünfte Person von rechts ist mein Vater.

The fifth person from the right is my father.

Ich nehme gern ein zweites Glas von dem herrlichen Wein.

I'd love a second glass of that wonderful wine.

The following examples use the same endings as in section 7.3 context (3):

Sie benutzen als Erster (or **Erste** if person spoken to is female) **unsere neue Maschine.**

You're the first to use our new machine.

Ich bin als Siebter mit der Prüfung fertig.

I'm the seventh to finish the test.

(2) Apart from **die Hälfte (-n)** (half), fractions are formed by adding **-el** to the ordinal number, which then becomes a neuter noun: for example, **das Viertel (-)** (quarter),

das Zehntel (-) (tenth). Or to give both parts of a fraction: **zwei Drittel** (two-thirds), **drei Achtel** (three-eighths), etc.

To say 'half (of) the ...' is often **die Hälfte von ...** (or, instead of **von**, the genitive case, see section 10.1):

Die Hälfte von dem Geld gehört mir.

Half of the money belongs to me.

However, when 'half' is followed by 'a/an', the adjective **halb** is used: **eine halbe Stunde** (half an hour), **ein halbes Brot** (half a loaf of bread).

'One and a half' is **anderthalb**, **eineinhalb**, or even **einundeinhalb**, and 'five and a half' is **fünfeinhalb** or **fünfundeinhalb**. These do not take any adjective endings even when they precede nouns.

Many compound words contain **Viertel**, such as **eine Viertelstunde** (a quarter of an hour); **ein Viertelliter** (a quarter of a litre) (m. or n., no change in the plural).

7.5 INFORMAL ADDRESS



As we've seen, there are several ways to say 'you' in German. In the examples so far, we've focused on the formal **Sie**, which is the form to use if you don't know someone well or a level of courtesy is required.

But for people you're on more casual, familiar terms with – family, friends, classmates, etc. – the informal second-person is used. In the singular, this is **du** (you), **dein** (your) (nominative), and their declensions. The **du** form of regular verbs in the present tense is the stem + **(e)st**. (The **e** is added after stems ending in **-t** or **-d**).

In the plural (when speaking to more than one person), use **ihr** (you), **euer** (your) nominative, and their declensions. The verb form is the stem + **(e)t**.

7.6 WORD ORDER

A key rule in German is that the verb has to be the second element in a sentence. This is the case whether it starts with a subject or some other element:

location	verb	subject
Auf dem Bild	sind	mehrere Sachen.
Auf einer Tischdecke	liegt	ein Brot.
Neben dem Brot	ist	ein Glas.
Hinter dem Brot	ist	eine Flasche mit einem Korken.
Auf der Flasche	ist	ein Etikett.

In simple statements like this, while the equivalent in English would often start with the subject, the German order is also possible: 'In the picture are several objects.' 'On the tablecloth is a loaf of bread.' 'Next to the bread is a glass.' 'Behind the bread is a bottle with a cork.' etc.

However, in German, other information might be at the beginning of a statement, such as a direct or indirect object, if this has been previously mentioned. But no matter what comes first, the verb must come second.

Here are some examples:

DO zwei Cola	verb wollen	subject Sie	rest aber nur eine Wurst dann sofort
den Theaterplatz	finden	Sie	
so etwas viel Spaß	glaubt wünsche	kein Mensch ich	Ihnen heute Abend
einen Stadtführer	suche	ich	
IO ihr Ihnen	verb gefallen wünsche	subject rote Rosen ich	rest bestimmt viel Spaß heute Abend

Exercise 2



Put the correct word from the column on the right into the following sentences. There may be more than one grammatically correct possibility, but not all of them make sense.

- | | |
|---|------------|
| 1 ... glaubt einem Verbrecher. | Solches |
| 2 ... Blumen sind für die Freundin? | Keiner |
| 3 ... Kuchen haben sie für das Kind. | Welches?!/ |
| 4 ... Mann finde ich nett. | Jeder |
| 5 ... Wein schmeckt wunderbar. | Dieser |
| 6 ... Glück haben wir mit dem Wetter. | Welche?!/ |
| 7 ... Buch aus der Hugo-Reihe kennen Sie? | Jede |
| 8 ... Hausbesitzer hat Schwierigkeiten. | Keinen |
| 9 ... Katze kommt ins Haus./? | Diesen |

7

VOCABULARY

einkaufen	to do the shopping
Jawohl!	Yes, certainly!
die Einkaufsliste (-n)	shopping list
alles	everything
erst	first (of all)
holen	to fetch, to go and get
der Bäcker (-) / die Bäckerin (-nen)	baker
das Weißbrot (-e)	loaf of white bread
frisch	fresh
das Brötchen (-)	roll
billig	cheap
der Supermarkt	supermarket
fahren	to drive, to go (by means of transport)
heute Nachmittag	this afternoon
dorthin	(to) there
Na gut!	All right then!

der Metzger (-) / die Metzgerin (-nen)	butcher
halb	half
das Pfund (-e) (-) after numbers	pound (500 grams)
das Hackfleisch gekocht	mince, ground meat boiled
der Schinken	ham
bedienen	to serve
man	one, they, people
immer	always
das Fleisch	meat
lieber	rather
die Altstadt	old town
müssen	to have to, must
dahin	(to) there
das Gemüsegeschäft	greengrocer's
der Kopfsalat (-e)	lettuce
fest	firm
die Gurke (-n)	cucumber
die Bohne (-n)	bean
grüne Bohnen	French beans, green beans
die Sache (-n)	thing, item
der Salat (-e)	salad
ander-	other
das Gemüse	vegetables
eilen	to be urgent
doch	after all
der Markt (-e)	market
unbedingt	definitely
das Ei (-er)	egg
noch	still
viele	many, a lot
kriegen	to get

CONVERSATION

Translate this conversation into English. You'll find the vocabulary you need on pages 86–87.

Putting off the shopping

- SIE **Gehst du bitte jetzt einkaufen?**
ER **Jawohl! Hast du eine Einkaufsliste für mich?**
SIE **Nein, ich sage dir alles ... Erst hol bitte vom Bäcker ein kleines Weißbrot und zehn frische Brötchen.**
ER **Sie sind billiger im Supermarkt, und wir fahren heute Nachmittag dorthin.**
SIE **Na gut! Dann kauf beim Metzger ein halbes Pfund Hackfleisch und dreihundertfünfzig Gramm gekochten Schinken.**
ER **Beim Metzger bedient man mich immer schlecht. Ich kaufe Fleisch lieber in der Altstadt, und heute Nachmittag müssen wir auch dahin.**
SIE **Na gut! Vom Gemüsegeschäft brauche ich dann einen Kopfsalat, anderthalb Pfund kleine feste Tomaten, eine schöne Gurke, zehn Pfund Kartoffeln und ein Pfund grüne Bohnen.**
ER **Die Sachen für den Salat und das andere Gemüse eilen nicht, und morgen ist doch Markt.**
SIE **Na gut, aber ich brauche unbedingt Eier.**
ER **Nein, brauchst du nicht. Wir haben noch viele. Eier kriegen wir dann auch vom Markt.**
SIE **Na gut, dann brauchst du nicht einkaufen gehen.**

SIE einkaufen?
ER Einkaufsliste?
SIE sage alles ... Bäcker ... Weißbrot ... Brötchen
ER in den Supermarkt fahren
SIE Metzger ... Hackfleisch ... Schinken
ER schlecht ... Altstadt ... Nachmittag
SIE Gemüsegeschäft ... Kopfsalat ... Tomaten ...
Gurke ... Kartoffeln ... Bohnen
ER eilen nicht ... Markt
SIE Eier
ER brauchst nicht ... noch viele ... Markt
SIE nicht einkaufen

Now construct a dialogue in which each pair of sentences is based on a pair of items/locations listed. The first sentence should be an informal (**du**) command to buy the item(s) somewhere; the second a response preferring (**lieber**) to buy them elsewhere. The first pair is provided.

- 1 anderthalb Pfund kleine feste Tomaten auf dem Markt
- 2 ein kleines Weißbrot im Supermarkt
- 3 250 Gramm gekochter Schinken in der Altstadt
- 4 ein Kopfsalat auf dem Markt
- 5 zwanzig Eier auf dem Markt
- 6 eine schöne Gurke auf dem Markt
- 7 zehn frische Brötchen im Supermarkt
- 8 ein halbes Pfund Hackfleisch in der Altstadt
- 9 zehn Pfund Kartoffeln auf dem Markt
- 10 ein Pfund grüne Bohnen auf dem Markt

Week 8

- *more on word order*
- *auxiliary verbs ('can', 'must', 'will', etc.) and how they are used with a main verb*
- *quantities and measurements*
- *verbs for 'to be' and 'to put' indicating position*
- *the use of **da(r)**- with prepositions to express 'on it', 'about them', etc.*

8.1 MORE ON WORD ORDER

There are two contexts when a verb is in the first position in a German sentence: a command (**Kommen Sie sofort!** Come at once!) and a question.

Gehst du jetzt bitte einkaufen?

('Go you now please to shop?')

This question illustrates another rule about word order. It contains two verbs: **gehst** and **einkaufen**. In this case, the conjugated verb (here, **gehst**) is in the first position (in a question) or the second position (in a statement).

The verb it is used with to complete its meaning (here, **einkaufen**) is used in its infinitive (**-en**) form (e.g. 'to shop'). Unlike in English, the two verbs are not found together. In German, the infinitive always comes at the end of the sentence (or question).

Remember that the introductory element might not be the subject. It could be a single word or a group of words such as a direct object, an adverbial phrase, an expression of time or place, etc. Below are some other examples of the structure when two verbs are used to express something (**gehen**, conjugated + infinitive):

Ich gehe zweimal in der Woche schwimmen.

('I go twice in the week to swim.')

Gehen wir morgen Abend mit der Gruppe essen?

('Go we tomorrow evening with the group to eat?')

Meine Mutter geht immer früh schlafen.

(‘My mother goes always early to sleep.’)

Manchmal gehen wir stundenlang im Wald spazieren.*

(‘Sometimes go we for hours in the forest to walk.’)

(*Other elements in the sentence that give information about TIME–MANNER–PLACE must appear in that order.)

8.2 AUXILIARY VERBS: ‘CAN’, ‘MUST’, ‘WILL’, ETC.

Let’s look at some auxiliary verbs, to which the rules described in section 8.1 apply. Auxiliary verbs are used to modify the way a main verb is understood. They include modal verbs (which express necessity, possibility, ability, etc.: e.g. ‘can’, ‘must’, ‘may’) as well as verbs used to indicate information about the tense (e.g. ‘will’).

Eight key auxiliary verbs (**dürfen** may, **können** can, **müssen** must, **sollen** should, **mögen** like to, **wollen** want to, **lassen** let, and **werden** will) are listed below with their conjugations in the present tense. They are all irregular and are frequently used with other verbs, so it is very useful to learn them.

	dürfen to be allowed to (permission)	können to be able to (possibility)
ich/er/sie(she)/es du (inf. sing.) wir/Sie/sie(they) ihr (inf. pl.)	darf darfst dürfen dürft	kann kannst können könnt
	mögen to like to (also ‘may’)	müssen to have to (obligation)
ich/er/sie(she)/es du (inf. sing.) wir/Sie/sie(they) ihr (inf. pl.)	mag magst mögen mögt	muss musst müssen müsst

	sollen to be supposed to (should)	wollen to want to, to intend to
ich/er/sie(she)/es	soll	will
du (inf. sing.)	sollst	willst
wir/Sie/sie(they)	sollen	wollen
ihr (inf. pl.)	sollt	wollt
	lassen to let/allow to	werden will (future)
ich	lasse	werde
du (inf. sing.)	lässt	wirst
er/sie(she)/es	lässt	wird
wir/Sie/sie(they)	lassen	werden
ihr (inf. pl.)	lasst	werdet

8.3 USING AUXILIARY VERBS

8

(1) dürfen: to be allowed to (permission), may/mustn't

Darf ich hier rauchen?

Can I smoke here?

Darf ich meinen Freund vorstellen?

May I introduce my friend?

In der Kirche darf man nicht laut reden.

One mustn't talk loudly in church.

(2) können: to be able to (possibility), can

Für seine sechs Jahre kann er sehr gut schwimmen.

He can swim very well considering he's only six.

Seine Rede kann noch lange dauern.

His speech may go on for a long time yet.

Wir können seine Experimente nicht finanzieren.

We aren't able to finance his experiments.

(3) mögen: to like, also may (possibility)

Er mag wohl reich sein, er kommt trotzdem nicht in den Club.

He may well be rich, but he's still not going to get into the club.

Ich mag nicht über alles klagen, aber ...

I don't like complaining about everything, but ...

(4) müssen: to have to (obligation), must/needn't

Ich muss um zwölf zu Hause sein, sonst kommt das Mittagessen zu spät auf den Tisch.

I must be home at twelve, or else I'll be late getting lunch on the table.

Dieser Brief ist an dich. Du musst nicht unbedingt antworten.

This letter is (addressed) to you. You aren't absolutely obliged to reply.

(5) sollen: to be supposed/expected to, should

Du sollst erst essen und dann ins Kino gehen.

You should eat first and then go to the cinema.

Ich kann nicht länger auf ihn warten, er soll sofort kommen.

I can't wait for him any longer, he's to come at once.

Ich kann ihn empfehlen, er soll ein sehr guter Klavierlehrer sein.

I can recommend him. He's said to be a very good piano teacher.

(6) wollen: to want to, to intend to

Er ist vollkommen satt, er will nichts mehr essen.

He is completely full. He doesn't want to eat another thing.

Sie will gar nichts mehr von der Sache hören.

She doesn't want to hear anything more at all about the matter.

Er will seine Ferien in den Bergen verbringen.

He intends to spend his holidays in the mountains.

(7) lassen: to let/allow someone to do, to get someone to, to make/have someone do, to have something done

Die Chefin lässt ihre Sekretärin unwichtige Briefe unterschreiben.

The boss gets her personal assistant to sign unimportant letters.

Er lässt seinen Wagen alle zwei Tage waschen.

He has his car washed every other day.

Mein Vater lässt grüßen.

My father sends his regards.

Wir lassen unsere Tochter nicht alleine zur Schule gehen.

We don't let our daughter walk to school on her own.

(8) werden: will (future tense auxiliary)

Ich mache es jetzt, ich werde in den nächsten Tagen keine Zeit haben.

I'll do it now. I won't have any time in the next few days.

Es ist schrecklich dunkel, es wird bestimmt regnen.

It's terribly dark. It's definitely going to rain.

VOCABULARY 1

Read through these new words that are used in the conversation that follows:

	etwas	somewhat
das	Übergewicht	extra weight
	abnehmen	to slim, to lose weight
der	Urlaub (-e)	holiday(s)
	anziehen	to wear, to put on
	unbedingt	absolutely
	Recht haben	to be right
	schwer	heavy
	hoffentlich	hopefully
	richtig	right, correct
	vorsichtig	careful, cautious
der	Arzt (-e) /	doctor
	die Ärztin (-nen)	
	mager	lean
der	Reis	rice
	passen	to fit
	vorig	last, previous
das	Jahr (-e)	year
	vernünftig	sensible
	weiß	I know, he/she knows (from wissen , to know)
	schneiden	to cut
	lecker	delicious
die	Sahnesoße	cream sauce
	allein	on their own
	schmecken	to taste (good)
	achten (auf)	to pay attention (to), to keep an eye (on)
der	Semmelknödel (-)	bread dumpling
das	Essen (-)	meal
das	Bierchen (-)	(nice) little beer
	Moment mal!	Hold on!
	zunehmen	to put on weight

CONVERSATION

At Monday breakfast: discussing the menu for the day's main meal

MUTTER **Was sollen wir denn heute essen?**

TOCHTER **Nach dem Wochenende habe ich bestimmt etwas Übergewicht. Von heute an muss ich abnehmen. In vier Wochen fahren wir in den Urlaub, da will ich meine Bikinis anziehen können. [Zu ihrem Bruder] Rudi, du musst auch unbedingt abnehmen.**

SOHN **Du hast Recht, ich bin zu schwer. Ich darf in den nächsten Wochen keine Kartoffeln mehr essen. Und hoffentlich lassen wir kein Bier mehr ins Haus bringen!**

VATER **Ganz richtig. Mit fünfzig muss ich auch vorsichtiger sein. Der Arzt sagt, ich soll nur Fisch oder mageres Fleisch essen, dazu nur frisches Gemüse, keine Kartoffeln, keinen Reis.**

MUTTER **Was soll es denn geben? Ich passe nicht mehr in meine Sommerkleidung vom vorigen Jahr. Wir müssen vernünftig sein. Ich weiß was, ich lasse beim Metzger vier extra magere Steaks schneiden.**

TOCHTER **Ja, und dann brauchen wir dazu nur eine leckere Sahnesoße.**

SOHN **Fleisch und Sahnesoße allein schmecken nicht.**

VATER **Das mag sein, aber wir müssen auf die Kalorien achten.**

SOHN **Vielleicht können wir dann ein paar Semmelknödel und Karotten in Buttersoße dazu essen.**

VATER **Zu so einem Essen muss man ein kaltes Bierchen trinken, nicht?**

MUTTER **Moment mal, werden wir nicht auch von diesem Essen zunehmen?**

TRANSLATION

- MOTHER Well, what should we eat today?
- DAUGHTER I definitely put on some extra weight after the weekend. I must lose weight from today onwards. We're going on holiday in four weeks, and I want to be able to wear my bikinis. [To her brother] Rudi, you absolutely have to lose weight too.
- SON You're right, I'm too heavy. I mustn't eat any potatoes in the next few weeks. And hopefully we won't be having any more beer brought into the house!
- FATHER Quite right. At fifty I have to be more careful too. The doctor says I should only eat fish or lean meat, and with it only fresh vegetables; no potatoes and no rice.
- MOTHER Well, what is it to be? I don't fit into my summer clothes from last year anymore. We have to be sensible. I know – I'll get four particularly lean steaks cut at the butcher's.
- DAUGHTER Yes, and then we only need a delicious cream sauce with them.
- SON Meat and cream sauce don't taste good on their own.
- FATHER That may be, but we've got to keep an eye on the calories.
- SON Then perhaps we can have a few dumplings and some carrots in butter sauce with them.
- FATHER You have to drink a nice cold beer with a meal like that, don't you?
- MOTHER Hold on, aren't we going to put on weight from this meal too?

Exercise 1

Insert the correct form of **dürfen**, **können**, or **müssen** in the following sentences, choosing the auxiliary verb that best fits the sense:

- 1 Sie ... gut Englisch sprechen, ihre Lehrerin ist gut.
- 2 Wir ... die Milch trinken, sonst wird sie schlecht.
- 3 Er ist sechzehn Jahre alt, er ... nicht Auto fahren.
- 4 Ich ... ins Geschäft gehen und einkaufen, wir haben heute Abend Freunde zu Besuch.
- 5 Er ... kein Bier trinken, er will abnehmen.
- 6 Die kleine Tochter ... den Film sehen, es ist Sonntag.
- 7 Das Mittagessen ... warten, sie will erst das Auto waschen.

8.4 MEASUREMENTS AND QUANTITIES

8

In English, 'of' is required in expressions such as:

two metres of string	(measurements)
a big pile of rubbish	(quantities)
some cans of beans	(other units)

However, the corresponding expressions in German don't include any linking word:

zwei Meter Bindfaden
ein großer Haufen Abfall
einige Dosen Bohnen

If the first noun is m. or n. it is always in the singular, even when the meaning is plural:

Ich brauche für dieses Rezept zwei Tassen Mehl.

I need two cups of flour for this recipe.

Ich trinke jeden Tag drei Glas Wasser.

I drink three glasses of water every day.

8.5 THE EXPRESSIONS **ES IST** AND **ES SIND** ('THERE IS' / 'THERE ARE')

In section 6.2 we saw the expression **es gibt**, which translates to 'there is/are' to talk about something generally. When you know that something exists or is available and the dominant idea is its quantity or number or location, use **es ist/sind**:

Es ist ein Brief für dich da.

There's a letter for you here.

Es sind zwei Zeitungen für meine Mutter da.

There are two newspapers here for my mother.

Remember that **es gibt** is invariable and is used with a singular or plural noun, which is a DO. With **es ist/sind**, the verb has to agree with the real subject of the sentence (here, **Brief**, singular and **Zeitungen**, plural). So the **es** is not the subject: the noun it refers to is. This noun thus needs to be in the nominative (SU) case.

8.6 VERBS FOR 'TO BE' INDICATING POSITION

8

German has several verbs that describe the position of things where in English we typically just use 'to be' (**sein**).

When talking about certain types of objects, choosing the appropriate verb isn't usually too tricky. Here are some examples with three of these verbs:

(1) When something is upright: **stehen** to stand

Auf dem Tisch steht eine alte Vase.

or **Eine alte Vase steht auf dem Tisch.**

or **Es steht eine alte Vase auf dem Tisch.**

There's an old vase on the table.

Der Fernseher steht in der Ecke.

The television is in the corner.

Note that sentences of this kind beginning with **es** (e.g. in the third example above) are only possible when the subject is a noun preceded by **(k)ein**, another indefinite word (e.g. **einige**), or nothing.

(2) When something is flat: **liegen** to lie

Auf dem Boden liegt ein schmutziger Teppich.

or **Ein schmutziger Teppich liegt auf dem Boden.**

or **Es liegt ein schmutziger Teppich auf dem Boden.**

There's a dirty carpet on the floor.

Die Zeitung liegt auf dem Wohnzimmertisch.

The newspaper is on the living room table.

(3) When something is inserted into, put inside or concealed behind: **stecken** to stick into

Im Schloss steckt ein rostiger Schlüssel.

or **Ein rostiger Schlüssel steckt im Schloss.**

or **Es steckt ein rostiger Schlüssel im Schloss.**

There's a rusty key in the lock.

Was steckt hinter dem Vorhang?

What's behind the curtain?

8.7 VERBS FOR 'TO PUT' INDICATING POSITION

Just as position can be specified with **stehen**, **liegen**, or **stecken**, the action of moving something to a position can be expressed either generally with **tun** (to put) or more specifically with **stellen**, **legen**, or **stecken**:

	to be in a position	to put in a position
general	sein	tun
upright	stehen	stellen
flat	liegen	legen
inserted	stecken	stecken

(1) General movement to a position: **tun** (to put, to do)

ich	tue
du (inf. sing.)	tust
er/sie (she)/ es	tut
wir/Sie/sie (they)	tun
ihr (inf. pl.)	tut

Er tut seine Bücher immer auf das falsche Regal.

He always puts his books on the wrong shelf.

Sie tut etwas Milch in die Milchkanne.

She's putting a little milk in the milk jug.

(2) To stand something upright: **stellen**

Wir stellen den Nachttisch neben das Bett.

We'll put the bedside table next to the bed.

Er stellt die leeren Flaschen vor die Tür.

He puts the empty bottles outside the door.

(3) To lay something down: **legen**

Sie legt einen Fünfeuroschein auf die Theke.

She put a fifty euro note on the counter.

(4) To insert something into, to stick inside or to conceal:
stecken

Er steckt gerade einen Zehneuroschein in deine Manteltasche!

He's just putting a ten euro note in your coat pocket!

8.8 MORE ABOUT PREPOSITIONS

With all of the prepositions we saw in section 6.1 (1)–(3), except **ohne** and **seit**, normally a following pronoun would only refer to a person. To refer to something other than a living being after a preposition, the pronoun is replaced with **da(r)-** + preposition.

This construction forms one word (e.g. **darüber**, **damit**), with the stress on the preposition. The **-r-** is used when the preposition begins with a vowel.

Compare:

Ich lache über sie.

I'm laughing at them. (e.g. my children, **meine Kinder**)

Ich lache darüber.

I'm laughing at them. (e.g. my mistakes, **meine Fehler**)

These **da(r)-** + preposition terms don't decline: they are invariable.

They can stand for a singular or a plural noun, which could be a thing or a fact or an idea.

A: Ich höre, er ist arbeitslos.

B: Ja, aber er redet nie darüber.

A: I hear he's unemployed.

B: Yes, but he never talks about it.

(i.e. about being unemployed)

Some combinations of **da(r)-** + preposition have acquired permanent meanings of their own:

dafür instead, on the other hand

dagegen by contrast, on the other hand

daher therefore

damit so that, in order that

darum therefore

As for the exceptions, **ohne** (without) is simply followed by the standard pronouns (see section 3.2).

To say 'since that', 'since it', or 'since then' using **seit**, the term is **seitdem**.

Exercise 2



Insert the most appropriate word from the column on the right into the gap in each of the following sentences. You may need to juggle with the **da(r)-** words so you only use each one once.

- | | |
|--|------------|
| 1 Er hat eine Feile in der Hand,
... öffnet er die Tür. | dazwischen |
| 2 Vor dem Einbrecher ist eine
Treppe, ... sitzt ein Skelett. | danach |
| 3 Wir trinken ein Glas Wasser, ...
gehen wir schlafen. | darauf |
| 4 Ich esse eine Wurst, ... trinke
ich eine Cola. | daneben |
| 5 Ich nehme fünf Rosen, ... muss
ich €10,75 bezahlen. | dahinter |
| 6 Auf der Tischdecke liegt ein Brot,
... steht ein Glas. | dazu |
| 7 Der junge Mann ist arbeitslos, ...
muss er etwas tun. | damit |
| 8 Sie sehen die Kirche und das
Gasthaus, Sie nehmen die
Straße ... | dagegen |
| 9 Das Haus steht direkt an der
Straße, der Garten liegt ... | davor |
| 10 Wir wollen einkaufen gehen, ...
müssen wir noch essen. | dafür |

VOCABULARY 2

	Pass auf!	Now look!
der	Kühlschrank (‘e)	refrigerator
	möglichst	as far/much as possible
	freihalten	to keep clear
das	Hähnchen (-)	chicken
die	Himbeertorte (-n)	raspberry flan
das	Fertigessen (-)	oven-ready meal
das	Eisfach (‘er)	freezer compartment
	morgen	tomorrow
	übermorgen	the day after tomorrow
der	Pflaumenkuchen (-)	plum tart
die	Schüssel (-n)	dish
die	Schlagsahne	whipped cream (also whipping cream)
der	Becher (-)	carton (also beaker, mug)
die	Packung (-en)	pack, packet
die	Leberwurst (‘e)	liver sausage
	einzel	singly, separately
das	Stück	piece (but with number sometimes omitted in translation)
	zum Weichwerden	to get soft
	flach	flat
der	Behälter (-)	container
der	Scheibenkäse	cheese in slices
der	Salat	lettuce, salad
die	Weintraube (-n)	grape
der	Beutel (-)	bag
die	Apfelsine (-n)	orange
der	Blumenkohl	cauliflower
der	Rosenkohl	Brussels sprouts
das	Gemüsefach (‘er)	vegetable compartment
das	Glas (‘er)	jar
der	Honig	honey
die	Erdbeermarmelade	strawberry jam
	Meine Güte!	My goodness!
das	Obst	fruit

Exercise 3

Complete the monologue by filling the spaces with the appropriate words for 'be' and 'put'. Do this exercise twice, first using the general **sein** and **tun**, and then using the more precise verbs from sections 8.6 and 8.7. The vocabulary you need is on page 105.

A daughter with elderly parents is about to leave town on business for a few days and tells her father what she has left in the refrigerator for them.

Pass auf! Ich werde den Kühlschrank möglichst freihalten. Dann kannst du alles ganz leicht finden. Das Hähnchen für Sonntag, die gefrorene Himbeertorte und die beiden Fertigessen (1) ... / ... ich ins Eisfach. Die Fertigessen kannst du morgen und übermorgen essen. Der Pflaumenkuchen und die Schüssel mit Schlagsahne (2) ... / ... oben. Da (3) ... / ... ich auch die beiden Flaschen Wein hin ... Ach, da ist gerade noch etwas Platz, den Becher Joghurt kann ich dazwischen (4) ... / ... Die vier Flaschen Bier (5) ... / ... ich unten in die Tür, und zwei Packungen Milch (6) ... / ... daneben. Ich (7) ... / ... die Packung gekochten Schinken, die Salami und die Leberwurst in die Mitte. Sie sind natürlich für abends ... Eier? ... Die Eier (8) ... / ... ich natürlich einzeln oben in die Tür, zwölf Stück. Zwei Stück Butter (9) ... / ... ich in das obere Fach in der Tür, das Dritte lasse ich draußen zum Weichwerden. Der flache Behälter mit drei Sorten Käse (10) ... / ... in der Mitte, und dahinter liegen eine Tube Mayonnaise und der Scheibenkäse. Die Gurke, der Salat, die Weintrauben und die Tomaten (11) ... / ... unten, und den Beutel Apfelsinen, einen Kopf Blumenkohl und den Rosenkohl (12) ... / ... ich ins Gemüsefach ganz unten. Ein kleines Glas Honig und ein Glas Erdbeermarmelade (13) ... / ... ich weiter oben in die Tür ... Meine Güte, ist der Kühlschrank wieder voll!

8

Exercise 4

Now translate the monologue from Exercise 3.

Week 9

- *further meanings and uses of **der, die, das***
- *more about the use of the present tense*
- *irregular present tense forms of some common verbs*
- *the present perfect tense to talk about the past*
- *time expressions, including months, days, dates, and times of day*

9.1 MORE ABOUT DER, DIE, DAS

(1) das is not only the definite article ‘the’ for neuter nouns, but can also be used as the pronoun ‘that’:

- (i) **A: Du sollst heute bezahlen.**

You’re supposed to pay today.

B: Das weiß ich. I know (that).

- (ii) **A: Zehn Brötchen kosten vier Euro.**

Ten rolls cost four euros.

B: Das ist zu teuer. That’s too much.

In the above, **das** is a direct object in (i) and the subject in (ii). It refers to an idea rather than an identifiable noun.

(2) der (m.), **die** (f.), and **die** (plural) can also be used as pronouns to mean **er** (m.), **sie** (f.), and **sie** (plural):

- (i) **A: Der Kellner hat unsere Bestellung seit einer Stunde.**

The waiter has had our order for an hour.

B: Der ist aber langsam! He’s so slow!

- (ii) **A: Ich warte auf die Schwester.**

I’m waiting for the nurse.

B: Die kommt heute nicht. She’s not coming today.

- (iii) **A: Was kosten Bananen?**

What’s the price of bananas?

B: Die sind diese Woche billig.

They’re cheap this week.

This use of **der** and **die** so dominates the speech of some Germans as to almost replace **er** and **sie**. When employed in this way, these pronouns tend to be used to start sentences, and so are less common in questions, where this is not possible. They always have some degree of emphasis when spoken with this meaning, unlike when they are used to mean 'the'.

(3) The nominative (SU) uses described in (1) and (2) also apply in the accusative (DO) and dative (IO) cases:

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	
DO	den (ihn)	die (sie)	das	die (sie)
IO	dem (ihm)	der (ihr)	dem	denen (ihnen)

Examples:

A: Geben Sie mir den Schlüssel.

Give me the key.

B: Den finde ich im Augenblick nicht. (m. DO)

I can't find it at the moment.

A: Der Chef verspricht mir immer wieder mehr Geld.

The boss is always promising me more money.

B: Dem kann man gar nichts mehr glauben. (m. IO)

You can't believe anything at all that he says.

A: Diese Milch ist sauer.

This milk is sour.

B: Die müssen wir wegwerfen. (f. DO)

We'll have to throw it away.

A: Frau Klimpel schwatzt sehr viel.

Frau Klimpel gossips a lot.

B: Ja, der erzähle ich nie (et)was. (f. IO)

Yes, I never tell her anything.

A: Er verkauft sein Geschäft.

He's selling his shop.

B: Wie bitte? Das glaube ich nicht. (n. DO)

What! I don't believe it.

A: Er hat zu viele Probleme mit seinem Geschäft.

He has too many problems with his business.

B: Dem ist er einfach nicht mehr gewachsen. (n. IO)
He simply can't cope (i.e. with the general situation) any more.

A: Drüben sitzen die neuen Nachbarn.
The new neighbours are sitting over there.

B: Die kennen wir leider noch nicht. (plural DO)
Unfortunately we don't know them yet.

A: Ich höre, die Kinder kriegen ein neues Geschwisterchen.
I hear the children are going to get a new little brother or sister.

B: Denen wollen wir aber eine Zeitlang noch nichts davon sagen. (plural IO)
We won't tell them anything (about it) for a while, though.

(4) der and **die** are often used, particularly in spoken German, before a first name or a family name to refer to individuals. With first names this may imply intimacy, and with family names it may have pejorative overtones:

Der Rudi muss jetzt nach Hause gehen.

Rudi has to go home now.

Ich sehe die Anna heute Abend.

I'm seeing Anna this evening.

Dem Thomas schenke ich fünf Euro.

I'll give Thomas five euros.

Der Schmidt lässt seine Kunden immer warten.

Schmidt is always keeping his customers waiting.

This usage has no parallel in English. The English 'the' before a family name, to mean a couple or family with that name, is entirely optional in German:

(Die) Schmidts sind nicht zu Hause.

The Schmidts are not at home.

(5) A single **der**, **die**, or **das** can never suffice to cover a series of nouns, particularly if they are of mixed gender

or number. But in both conversation and writing, it is common practice to omit **der, die, das** altogether with groups of two or more nouns, even if separated by **und**:

Das Frühstück ist fertig. Brot, Butter, Eier, Marmelade, Honig, Kaffee, Milch, Zucker, Salz und Pfeffer stehen auf dem Tisch.

Breakfast is ready. The bread, butter, eggs, jam, honey, coffee, milk, sugar, salt and pepper are on the table.

Exercise 1

Insert the correct declension of **der, die, or das** in the following sentences.

- 1 A Wie geht es den Geschwistern?
B Von ... hören wir gar nichts.
- 2 A Wie lange müssen wir auf den Kaffee warten?
B ... ist schon lange fertig!
- 3 Der Junge bekommt immer soviel Geld von mir. ... gebe ich jetzt nichts mehr.
- 4 A Bei diesem Wetter kann man gar nicht gut arbeiten.
B ... sage ich auch.
- 5 A Unsere Tochter heiratet nächste Woche.
B ... wünsche ich viel Spaß!
- 6 A Wie alt ist der Sohn von der Wirtin?
B ... weiß ich nicht.
- 7 A Wie alt ist der Sohn von der Wirtin?
B ... kenne ich nicht.
- 8 A Ich lese gern die Sonntagszeitung.
B ... lese ich auch gern.
- 9 A Meine Eltern sind krank, aber sie wollen nicht zum Arzt.
B ... kann man aber auch gar nicht helfen!
- 10 A Herr Schmidt verkauft mir saure Milch.
B Bei ... kaufe ich nichts mehr!

9.2 USES OF THE PRESENT TENSE

(1) The present tense in German is used for any situations taking place in the present, as well as ongoing actions, including actions you're in the middle of (the present continuous, as in the second sentence below):

I go to my mother's twice a week.
I'm going home.

It's also used to express an action that will occur in the future, if this seems like a clear extension of the present:

Nächsten Monat fahre ich in die Vereinigten Staaten.

I'm going to the United States next month.

Ich fahre mit meinem Bruder in Urlaub.

I'm going on holiday with my brother.

(2) When the future is more open, relying more on intention or conviction, the future tense with **werden** (conjugated in the present) and the infinitive is used:

Ich werde nicht mehr so viel trinken.

I'm going to drink less.

Bei solcher Inflation wird alles bald viel mehr kosten.

With inflation like this, everything's going to cost a lot more soon.

Sometimes the future with **werden** is necessary for clarity. For example, the following request

Können Sie mir helfen, ich suche meine Koffer.

Can you help me? I'm looking for my suitcases.

could have an answer in the present tense:

Ich helfe Ihnen.

I'll help you.

Here the present tense has a clear future meaning, the implication being **sofort** or **gleich** (at once), which might be added. But if the intended meaning is 'I'll do my best', the present tense could be misleading ('I'm doing my best') and the future with **werden** is preferable:

Ich werde mein Bestes tun. I'll do my best.

(3) Used with a time reference, the present tense indicates a state of affairs continuing from the past into the present (English requires the present perfect in this context).

Ich kenne ihn seit sechs Jahren.

I have known him for six years.

Wie lange wohnen Sie schon hier?

How long have you been living here?

Wir wohnen hier seit 2012.

We've been living here since 2012.

9.3 PRESENT TENSE: IRREGULAR VERBS

There are several common verbs that are irregular in the present tense in the second- and third-person singular. Some of these key verbs are listed below, grouped according to the sound change in the stem vowel that occurs. Only the third-person singular is given. The second person (**du**) is formed by inserting **-s-** before the final **-t** (unless the stem ends in **-s**, **-ss**, or **-ß**):

infinitive		3rd-person singular
fahren	to go (by means of transport), to travel	fährt he/she/it goes
fallen	to fall	fällt
halten	to hold	hält
schlafen	to sleep	schläft
schlagen	to beat, to hit	schlägt
tragen	to carry, to wear	trägt
verlassen	to leave	verlässt
wachsen	to grow	wächst

laufen	to run	läuft
lesen	to read	liest
sehen	to see	sieht
stehlen	to steal	stiehlt
essen	to eat	isst
geben	to give	gibt
helfen	to help	hilft
nehmen	to take	nimmt
sprechen	to speak	spricht
vergessen	to forget	vergisst
werfen	to throw	wirft

One common verb is irregular throughout the singular:

wissen	to know (a fact)	ich/er/sie/es weiß du weißt
---------------	------------------	--

9.4 THE PRESENT PERFECT

This tense is formed in English with the auxiliary verb ‘to have’ + past participle of the main verb (e.g. ‘I have lived’). We’ll look at the uses of the present perfect in section 9.6. First let’s look at how it’s formed in German.

The good news is that it is also formed with the auxiliary verb **haben** plus a past participle (however, with certain verbs **sein** is the auxiliary: more on this in section 9.5).

As we’ve seen, when two verbs are used together, the conjugated verb is the second element of the sentence (or the first or second in a question), and the main verb – in this case, the past participle – moves to the end of the sentence (see sections 8.2–8.3 for a reminder).

In English, a regular past participle is formed by adding -ed to the verb (e.g. helped, climbed), although there are many irregular past participles (e.g. made, done, become, been, thrown, etc.).

For most verbs, the past participle is formed in German by putting the prefix **ge-** before the stem and replacing the **-en** of the infinitive ending with **-t**. For example:

machen (to make) → **ge-mach-t** → **gemacht** (made)

If the stem of the verb ends in **t** or **d**, an **-e-** is inserted before the added **-t** for pronunciation reasons:

warten (to wait) → **ge-wart-et** → **gewartet** (waited)

Note the word order of the two verbs:

Wir haben ein Bild gemalt.

We [have painted
have been painting
painted
were painting] a picture.

Wir sind in die Küche gerast.

We [have rushed
have been rushing
rushed
were rushing] into the kitchen.

9.5 WHICH AUXILIARY: SEIN OR HABEN?

9

Usually, **haben** is the auxiliary in the perfect tenses. However, in the two contexts below, **sein** is the auxiliary:

(1) If the main verb (i.e. the verb used as the past participle) denotes a process involving motion or a change of state: e.g. **kommen** (to come); **springen** (to jump); **sterben** (to die); **werden** (to become). However, this does not include verbs with an explicit or implied direct object such as **bringen** (to take, to bring); **reichen** (to hand); **schicken** (to send); **ziehen** (to pull).

(2) If the main verb is either **sein** (to be) or **bleiben** (to stay, to remain): somewhat counterintuitively, these take **sein** as the auxiliary even though they imply the opposite of motion or a change of state.

Examples:

Ich bin hin und her gelaufen. (motion)

I ran (or walked) to and fro.

Ich bin zur Schule gegangen (motion), **aber mein Bruder ist zu Hause geblieben** (from **bleiben**).

I went to school, but my brother stayed at home.

Meine Großmutter ist vier Wochen krank gewesen (from **sein**).

My grandmother was ill for four weeks.

Dann ist sie gestorben. (change of state)

Then she died.

As a result, certain verbs can take either **sein** or **haben**, according to the meaning. For example, **fahren**:

Wir sind immer mit dem Zug gefahren. (no DO)

We always went by train.

Er hat einen eleganten Sportwagen gefahren. (DO)

He was driving an elegant sports car.

Note that all the past participles above are irregular – these generally end in **-en**.

9.6 USES OF THE PRESENT PERFECT

In German, the present perfect is used to talk about any event that happened in the past. It is more flexible than the equivalent in English, which is only used if something happened at an indefinite time or started in the past and is continuing into the present. Thus, the German present perfect can have a wide variety of meanings:

We have bought a house.

We have been buying a house.

We bought a house.

We were buying a house.

To convey any of these meanings, the German is simply:

Wir haben ein Haus gekauft.

9.7 THE PAST PARTICIPLE

As we've seen, most verbs form the past participle by adding **ge_(e)t** to the stem. This is the case for most words originating from non-German sources (e.g.

gestartet, gestoppt, gelandet, gecheckt).

Here are some examples of the standard pattern:

infinitive		stem	past participle
kaufen	to buy	kauf	gekauft (bought)
machen	to make, do	mach	gemacht (made, done)
sagen	to say	sag	gesagt (said)
zählen	to count	zähl	gezählt (counted)
baden	to bathe	bad	gebadet (bathed)
blenden	to dazzle	blend	geblendet (dazzled)
bluten	to bleed	blut	geblutet (bled)
leisten	to achieve	leist	geleistet (achieved)

But we also mentioned that some verbs don't follow this pattern.

(1) Irregular past participles

Helpfully, an irregular past participle in German often corresponds to an irregular form of an English verb from the same source (e.g. **schwimmen** to swim, **geschwommen** swum).

Here are the main irregular past participles, grouped according to the changes that occur. Any particular oddities are underlined.

infinitive		past participle
brennen	to burn	gebrannt
bringen	to bring, to take	gebracht
denken	to think	gedacht
kennen	to know (someone)	gekannt
wissen	to know (a fact)	gewusst
essen	to eat	gegessen
fahren	to go (by transport)	gefahren
fangen	to catch	gefangen

geben	to give	gegeben
halten	to hold	gehalten
kommen	to come	gekommen
laufen	to run	gelaufen
lesen	to read	gelesen
messen	to measure	gemessen
rufen	to call (out)	gerufen
schlafen	to sleep	geschlafen
schlagen	to hit, to beat	geschlagen
sehen	to see	gesehen
stoßen	to bump	gestoßen
tragen	to carry, to wear	getragen
treten	to step	getreten
wachsen	to grow	gewachsen

stehen	to stand	gestanden
gehen	to go	gegangen

brechen	to break	gebrochen
helfen	to help	geholfen
sprechen	to speak	gesprochen
sterben	to die	gestorben
treffen	to meet	getroffen
werden	to become	geworden

nehmen	to take	genommen
---------------	---------	-----------------

stehlen	to steal	gestohlen
----------------	----------	------------------

leiden	to suffer	gelitten
pfeifen	to whistle	gepfeffen
schneiden	to cut	geschnitten
streiten	to quarrel	gestritten

bleiben	to stay, remain	geblieben
leihen	to lend	geliehen
scheinen	to seem, shine	geschienen
schreiben	to write	geschrieben
steigen	to climb	gestiegen
treiben	to drive, impel	getrieben

sitzen	to sit	gesessen
schwimmen	to swim	geschwommen
finden	to find	gefunden
sinken	to sink	gesunken
springen	to jump	gesprungen
trinken	to drink	getrunken
bitten	to ask, request	gebeten
riechen	to smell	gerochen
schließen	to shut, close	geschlossen
liegen	to lie (recline)	gelegen
bieten	to offer	geboten
fliegen	to fly	geflogen
fliehen	to flee	geflohen
ziehen	to pull, draw	gezogen
lügen	to lie (fib)	gelogen
sein	to be	gewesen

(2) Effect of prefixes on the past participle

Many German words are composites, consisting of a central core with a distinctive meaning (the root), to which further syllables can be attached before or after. In the case of an infinitive such as **bekommen** (to get), the structure looks like this:

be	+	komm	+	en
prefix	+	root	+	suffix

The prefix, attached to the front, combines with the root to produce the overall meaning of the verb. The root provides the core meaning of the verb. The suffix, attached to the end, is the ending that identifies the form of the verb.

Suffixes thus typically indicate the tense and the person of the conjugation. Verbs with a prefix form the past participle differently from the patterns we have seen.

Verbs with an inseparable prefix don't take the prefix **ge-**. (As their name implies, these are verbs whose prefix always remains attached to the front of the verb.)

Some key inseparable-prefix verbs and their past participles are listed below. The stressed syllables are underlined, as this is important in the pronunciation. Note that the prefix is unstressed.

TYPE I: INSEPARABLE-PREFIX VERBS

infinitive	past participle	prefix	root	suffix
be<u>kommen</u>	be<u>kommen</u>	be	<u>komm</u>	en
to get	got/gotten			
emp<u>finden</u>	emp<u>fund</u>en	emp	<u>fund</u>	en
to feel	felt			
ent<u>sprechen</u>	ent<u>spro</u>chen	ent	<u>sproch</u>	en
to correspond	corresponded			
er<u>warten</u>	er<u>wart</u>et	er	<u>wart</u>	et
to expect	expected			
ge<u>hören</u>	ge<u>hör</u>t	ge	<u>hör</u>	t
to belong	belonged			
miss<u>lingen</u>	miss<u>lung</u>en	miss	<u>lung</u>	en
to fail	failed			
ver<u>stehen</u>	ver<u>stand</u>en	ver	<u>stand</u>	en
to understand	understood			
wid<u>ersprechen</u>	wid<u>erspro</u>chen	wider	<u>sproch</u>	en
to contradict	contradicted			
zer<u>stören</u>	zer<u>stör</u>t	zer	<u>stör</u>	t
to destroy	destroyed			

In contrast, verbs with separable prefixes form their past participle by inserting the **-ge-** after the prefix and before the root. (Separable-prefix verbs are those with a prefix that detaches from the stem and moves to the last position in the sentence in present tense statements.)

Some separable-prefix verbs and their past participles are listed below. Note that the prefix is stressed.

TYPE II: SEPARABLE-PREFIX VERBS

infinitive	past participle	prefixes	root	suffix
<u>an</u>kommen to arrive	<u>an</u>gekommen arrived	<u>an</u>	ge	kommen
<u>auf</u>stehen to stand up	<u>auf</u>gestanden stood up	<u>auf</u>	ge	stand en
<u>aus</u>machen to switch off	<u>aus</u>gemacht switched off	<u>aus</u>	ge	mach t
<u>bei</u>treten to join	<u>bei</u>getreten joined	<u>bei</u>	ge	tret en
<u>ein</u>laden to invite	<u>ein</u>geladen invited	<u>ein</u>	ge	lad en
<u>gegen</u>zeichnen to countersign	<u>gegen</u>gezeichnet countersigned	<u>gegen</u>	ge	zeichn et
<u>mit</u>helfen to assist	<u>mit</u>gehoffen assisted	<u>mit</u>	ge	holf en
<u>nach</u>holen to catch up	<u>nach</u>geholt caught up	<u>nach</u>	ge	hol t
<u>vor</u>beugen to avert	<u>vor</u>gebeugt averted	<u>vor</u>	ge	beug t
<u>zu</u>hören to listen	<u>zu</u>gehört listened	<u>zu</u>	ge	hör t

The past participle of both types of verbs is written as a single word, e.g. **verstanden** (understood), **ausgemacht** (switched off).

So how do you know which suffix to add for the past participle in these contexts? In both types of verbs, follow this rule: if the corresponding verb without a prefix is

irregular (e.g. **stehen** to stand → **gestanden** stood), any related verbs with prefixes take the same irregularity (e.g. **aufstehen** to stand up → **aufgestanden** stood up; **verstehen** to understand → **verstanden** understood).

The two preceding tables contain the main prefixes that are used exclusively as inseparable or separable prefixes, but they are not exhaustive.

There are some prefixes (e.g. **über, um, unter**) that can be inseparable or separable, producing verbs with completely different meanings: e.g. **umbauen** (to build around, to enclose); **umbauen** (to rebuild, to convert).

To help you identify and use these verbs correctly, all verbs with prefixes are labelled (I) or (II) in the mini-dictionary and in the vocabulary lists from now on.

(3) Verbs ending in **-ieren**

All verbs with an infinitive ending in **-ieren** (note the stress) (e.g. **telefonieren, kontrollieren, interessieren, informieren**) form the past participle without the **ge-**, but with the **-t** (e.g. **telefoniert**, etc.).

Exercise 2

For each sentence, insert the correct form of **sein** or **haben** in the first gap and the past participle of the given main verb in the second gap.

- 1 Er ... mir den Schlüssel ... (bringen)
- 2 Mein Freund ... heute in die Vereinigten Staaten ... (fliegen)
- 3 Unsere Eltern ... vor einigen Jahren ... (sterben)
- 4 Meine Mutter ... die Erdbeermarmelade in den Kühlschrank ... (stellen)
- 5 Das Kind ... vom Tisch ... (springen)
- 6 Ich ... heute den ganzen Tag zu Hause ... (bleiben)
- 7 Dieses Jahr ... die Miete für unsere Wohnung sehr ... (steigen)
- 8 Ich ... meiner Wirtin einen Brief ... (schicken)
- 9 Wir ... von meiner Schwester Geld ... (bekommen)
- 10 Du ... wirklich sehr groß ... (werden)

9

9.8 TIME EXPRESSIONS

(1) Expressions for frequency

nie	never
je (jemals)	ever
selten	rarely
einmal	once
zweimal	twice (dreimal three times, etc.)
ab und zu	occasionally
manchmal	sometimes
regelmäßig	regularly
immer wieder	again and again
immer	always

(2) General expressions for 'now'

jetzt	now (can refer to what is happening or what is imminent)
nun	now (the final step in a series: also has the non-temporal sense of 'well now')
im Augenblick augenblicklich im Moment momentan	at the moment
eben gerade	just now (a moment ago); right now (at the moment); now, just (presently, in a moment) (as with 'just', eben and gerade often also mean 'simply' or 'barely')
vorhin	a short while ago
neulich	recently (but only in the sense of a particular recent occasion in the speaker's mind)
letztens in letzter Zeit	recently
vor einiger Zeit sofort, gleich bald nachher	some time ago straight away, immediately, at once soon afterwards

(3) General expressions related to 'then'

dann	then
damals	at that time
davor, vorher	before that
kurz davor	shortly before that

danach	after that, afterwards
kurz danach	shortly afterwards
früher	formerly

(4) Time measured from now

vor einem Monat	a month ago
vor einer Woche	a week ago
seit fünf Sekunden	for five seconds (i.e. starting five seconds ago)
in drei Tagen	in three days (i.e. after three days)

(5) Time measured from then

einen Monat davor	a month before, previously
einen Monat zuvor	
seit vier Jahren	for four years (i.e. starting four years previously)
nach zwei Wochen	two weeks later
zwei Wochen danach	
zwei Wochen später	

(6) Expressions related to 'today'

heute	today
gestern	yesterday
vorgestern	the day before yesterday
heute vor einer Woche	a week ago today
heute vor acht Tagen	
gestern vor zwei Wochen	two weeks ago yesterday
gestern vor vierzehn Tagen	
morgen	tomorrow
übermorgen	the day after tomorrow

heute in drei Wochen
morgen in acht Tagen

three weeks from today
a week from tomorrow

YEARS, MONTHS, DAYS, DATES, AND TIME

(1) Years (see also section 4.2): no preposition, or more formally, preceded by **im Jahre**:

2030 werde ich zwanzig. I'll be twenty in 2030.

or

Er hat im Jahre 2015 geheiratet. He got married in 2015.

seit/vor/nach 2020 since/before/after 2020

(2) Seasons: preposition **in** (all are m. nouns, so usually **im**)

	Frühling		spring
im	Sommer	in	summer
	Herbst		autumn
	Winter		winter

(3) Months: preposition **in** (all are m. nouns, so usually **im**)

	Januar		Juli
	Februar		August
im	März	im	September
	April		Oktober
	Mai		November
	Juni		Dezember

(4) Days: preposition **an** (all are m. nouns, so usually **am**)

	Sonntag		Sunday
	Montag		Monday
	Dienstag		Tuesday
am	Mittwoch	on	Wednesday
	Donnerstag		Thursday
	Freitag		Friday
	Sonnabend		Saturday
	<i>or Samstag</i>		

(5) Dates

Without the preposition 'of', but with a full stop after the number to indicate it is an ordinal number:

Heute ist der 1. März. (erste) Today is the 1st of March.

Donnerstag ist der 3. Mai. (dritte)

Morgen ist der 7. November. (siebte)

Freitag ist der 19. Juli. (neunzehnte)

Übermorgen ist der 20. Oktober. (zwanzigste)

Dating a letter or document:

den 2. Januar 2021 (zweiten) (accusative case: DO)

den 30.8.2021 (dreißigsten Achten) (as above)

With preposition **an**:

Am 15. Juni fahren wir in Urlaub. (fünfzehnten)

We're going on holiday on the 15th of June.

(6) Time of day: preposition **um**

8.00 acht Uhr

8.05 fünf nach acht

8.08 acht Minuten nach acht

8.10 zehn nach acht

8.15 Viertel nach acht or viertel neun

8.20 zwanzig nach acht

8.25 fünf vor halb neun

8.30 halb neun

8.32 zwei Minuten nach halb neun

8.35 fünf nach halb neun

8.40 zwanzig vor neun

8.45 Viertel vor neun or drei viertel neun

Um Viertel nach eins kommt der Arzt.

The doctor's coming at a quarter past one.

The 24-hour clock, which is frequently used in timetables and other official contexts, is straightforward:

14.30 vierzehn Uhr dreißig
22.27 zweiundzwanzig Uhr siebenundzwanzig

Exercise 3



Choose which of the sentences (a), (b), or (c) is most compatible with the initial statement.

- 1** Im Augenblick habe ich keine Zeit.
(a) Ich spiele in zwei Stunden Tennis.
(b) Ich habe jetzt viel Arbeit.
(c) Ich schlafe im Augenblick.
- 2** In zwei Wochen fahre ich in die Vereinigten Staaten.
(a) Ich bin für zwei Wochen in den Vereinigten Staaten.
(b) Der Urlaub in den Vereinigten Staaten ist zwei Wochen.
(c) Ich fahre heute in vierzehn Tagen in die Vereinigten Staaten.
- 3** Übermorgen muss ich beim Metzger einkaufen.
(a) In zwei Tagen kaufe ich ein Pfund Hackfleisch.
(b) Übermorgen verkauft der Metzger sein Geschäft.
(c) Übermorgen verkaufe ich Gemüse.
- 4** Seit gestern vor vierzehn Tagen ist seine Mutter krank.
(a) Seine Mutter ist in vierzehn Tagen krank.
(b) Seine Mutter ist schon zwei Wochen krank.
(c) Vor vierzehn Tagen ist seine Mutter im Bett geblieben.
- 5** Vera ist eben in die Stadt gegangen.
(a) Vera ist momentan in der Stadt.
(b) Gerade ist Vera in die Stadt gefahren.
(c) Vera will gleich in der Stadt spazieren gehen.
- 6** Früher hat Martin Bücher geschrieben.
(a) Neulich hat Martin Bücher geschrieben.
(b) Nachher schreibt Martin Bücher.
(c) Martin hat damals gute Bücher geschrieben.

9

9.9 NICHT WAHR?, ETC.

In English, we frequently use question tags, which are basically a request for confirmation. These are determined by the verb that has been used:

He likes the painting, doesn't he?

So he likes the painting, does he?

He won't buy it, will he?

We won't pay, will we?

We're not going to pay, are we?

Or a question tag that suits all contexts would be 'Right?'

This is the approach taken in German, although the tag varies from region to region as well as according to the degree of formality.

The most formal tag, which can also be used in writing, is ..., **nicht wahr?** ('not true?')

The most frequently used form is a shortened version of this: ..., **nicht?** But note that the initial comma is essential, otherwise the sentence becomes negative.

Most casual of all is ..., **ne?**

Regional variants include ..., **woll?** and ..., **gell?**

If you're less certain about the initial statement, ..., **oder?** ('or?') can be used, especially with negative sentences. However, this is far less common.

Wir zahlen doch nicht, nicht wahr?

We're not going to pay, right?

Wir zahlen doch nicht, oder?

We're not going to pay, or are we?

VOCABULARY

der Arzt (-e) /	doctor
die Ärztin (-nen)	
zum ersten Mal	for the first time
jahrelang	for years
plötzlich	suddenly
unangenehm	unpleasant
der Schmerz (-en)	pain
das Handgelenk (-e)	wrist
bemerken (I)	to notice
das Gelenk (-e)	joint (e.g. wrist)
steif	stiff
die Gelegenheit (-en)	occasion
passieren	to happen
der Schwager (-) /	brother-in-law /
die Schwägerin (-nen)	sister-in-law
der Umzug (-e)	removal
meinen	to say (give an opinion)
der Beruf (-e)	job
benutzen (I)	to use
der Maurer (-) /	bricklayer
die Maurerin (-nen)	
etwa	approximately; perhaps
der Fliesenleger (-) /	tiler
die Fliesenlegerin (-nen)	
schon mal	ever
von selbst	by itself
röntgen	to X-ray
wie gesagt	as (I) said
erst mal	first of all
untersuchen (I)	to examine
allgemein	generally
das Herz (-en)	heart
abhören (II)	to check (heart, lungs)
der Blutdruck	blood pressure
messen	to measure
die Blutprobe (-n)	blood test
behandeln (I)	to treat
überweisen (I)	to transfer, to hand over
schütteln	to shake

CONVERSATION

A doctor receives a new patient

- PATIENT **Guten Tag, Frau Doktor!**
- ÄRZTIN **Guten Tag, Sie sind zum ersten Mal bei mir, nicht?**
- PATIENT **Ja, ich bin jahrelang bei keinem Arzt gewesen.**
- ÄRZTIN **Und was haben Sie denn jetzt so plötzlich?**
- PATIENT **Vor einigen Tagen habe ich sehr unangenehme Schmerzen im rechten Handgelenk bemerkt, und das Gelenk ist auch ganz steif geworden.**
- ÄRZTIN **Bei welcher Gelegenheit ist das passiert?**
- PATIENT **Ich habe neulich meiner Schwester und meinem Schwager beim Umzug geholfen und sehr schwere Sachen getragen. Sofort danach habe ich es gemerkt. Die haben gemeint, ich soll zum Arzt gehen.**
- ÄRZTIN **Haben Sie einen manuellen Beruf?
... mit anderen Worten, benutzen Sie Ihre Hände viel?**
- PATIENT **Früher bin ich Maurer gewesen, aber seit etwa einem Jahr bin ich Fliesenleger.**
- ÄRZTIN **Spielen Sie etwa Handball oder Tennis?**
- PATIENT **Ja, ab und zu beides.**
- ÄRZTIN **Haben Sie schon mal Probleme mit dem Handgelenk gehabt?**
- PATIENT **Ja, vor etwa zwei Monaten, aber es ist von selbst besser geworden. Diesmal sind die Schmerzen viel stärker als vor zwei Monaten.**
- ÄRZTIN **Hat man Ihnen das Handgelenk je geröntgt?**
- PATIENT **Nein, wie gesagt, ich bin lange nicht mehr zum Arzt gegangen.**

- ÄRZTIN **Ich werde Sie erst mal allgemein untersuchen ... Herz abhören ... Blutdruck messen ... Urin untersuchen ... eine Blutprobe machen ...**
- PATIENT **Warum denn das alles?**
- ÄRZTIN **Sie waren doch so lange nicht beim Arzt... und dann das Handgelenk röntgen...**
- PATIENT **... und dann werden Sie das Handgelenk behandeln, nicht?**
- ÄRZTIN **O nein! Dann überweise ich Sie an meinen Kollegen Henschel. Der ist Orthopäde!**
- PATIENT **[Schüttelt den Kopf]**

TRANSLATION

- PATIENT Hello, doctor.
- DOCTOR Hello. This is the first time you've come to see me, isn't it?
- PATIENT Yes, I haven't been to a doctor for years.
- DOCTOR And what's the matter with you now all of a sudden?
- PATIENT A few days ago I noticed some very unpleasant pains in my right wrist, and the joint also got quite stiff.
- DOCTOR On what occasion did that happen?
- PATIENT I was helping my sister and brother-in-law move house (lit. 'with the house-moving') recently and carrying very heavy things. I noticed it immediately afterwards. They said I should go to the doctor.
- DOCTOR Do you have a manual job? ... in other words, do you use your hands a lot?
- PATIENT I used to be a bricklayer, but I've been a tiler for about a year.
- DOCTOR Do you play, say, handball or tennis?
- PATIENT Yes, both now and again.

- DOCTOR Have you ever had problems with your wrist before?
- PATIENT Yes, about two months ago, but it got better by itself. This time the pains are much worse than two months ago.
- DOCTOR Has your wrist ever been X-rayed?
- PATIENT No. As I said, I haven't been to the doctor for a long time.
- DOCTOR First I'll give you a general examination ... check your heart ... measure your blood pressure ... check your urine ... do a blood test ...
- PATIENT Why all that?
- DOCTOR Well, as you haven't been to a doctor for such a long time ... and then X-ray your wrist ...
- PATIENT ... and then you'll give me some treatment for my wrist, won't you?
- DOCTOR Oh no! Then I'll transfer you to my colleague Dr Henschel. He specializes in orthopaedics!
- PATIENT [Shakes his head]

Week 10

- *the genitive case (used to indicate possession) and a group of masculine nouns with unusual case endings*
- *more separable-prefix verbs*
- *verb constructions with **zu** + infinitive, **um ... zu**, **ohne ... zu**, and **statt ... zu***
- *the passive voice*
- *the present perfect of modal and other auxiliary verbs*
- *the simple past of **haben**, **sein**, and modal verbs*

10.1 THE GENITIVE CASE (POSSESSION)

In addition to the nominative (subject), accusative (DO), and dative (IO), there is a remaining fourth case: the genitive. This is used to indicate possession or a close relationship between two things.

In English, there are two ways of linking two nouns to show that one possesses or is related to the other:

(A) apostrophe + s

Friday's meeting

John's wife's aunt

both companies' profits

women's rights

(B) the preposition 'of'

the tip of the iceberg

the opinion of the judge

the end of the matter

the brother of the deceased

In German, possession is expressed by case endings. This means that there are distinctive forms of **der**, **ein**, etc., of adjectives, and – for singular masculine and neuter nouns only – of the noun itself.

The construction is similar to (B), but look what happens to 'my friend':

die Schwägerin meines Freundes

my friend's sister-in-law ('the sister-in-law of my friend')

10

Here are some other examples:

die Ansichten beider Rechtsanwälte

the views of both lawyers

der Ruf des ehemaligen Politikers

the former politician's reputation

der Wagen einer alten Dame

an old lady's car

The table below shows the declensions for the genitive case for the articles, demonstrative and possessive adjectives, etc.:

	singular			plural
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.
der , etc.	des	der	des	der
ein , etc.	(k)eines	(k)einer	(k)eines	keiner
diese , etc.	dieses	dieser	dieses	dieser
	jedes	jeder	jedes	–
poss. adj.	unseres	unserer	unseres	unserer
(e.g. mein)	Ihres	Ihrer	Ihres	Ihrer

In addition to the above, the following words also decline:

- an adjective after
der, etc. adds **-en** (m. f. n. sing. & pl.)
- an adjective after
ein, etc. adds **-en** (m. f. n. sing. & pl.)
- an adjective alone (no article) adds (m. f. n. sing. & pl.):
-en -er -en -er
- a masculine or neuter singular noun adds:
-(e)s – -(e)s –

The **(e)** of the m. and n. singular noun ending is often inserted after monosyllabic noun stems, e.g. **Freundes** friend's (compare to **Politikers** politician's).

10.2 PREPOSITIONS REQUIRING THE GENITIVE

As we saw in section 6.1, certain prepositions require that the following noun or pronoun be in a particular case. Listed below are a few common prepositions that take the genitive case. The English translations all contain 'of', showing that they indicate the relationship of the following noun with something:

außerhalb	outside of
innerhalb	inside of
jenseits	on the far side of (beyond)
statt	instead of
trotz	in spite of
während	in the course of (during)
wegen	because of, on account of

There are also certain pronouns that are used with prepositions that require this case. The below are the most common – note that the pronoun combines with the preposition in these unusual forms:

stattdessen	instead (of it)
trotzdem	in spite of this, nevertheless
währenddessen	in the course of it/this
deswegen	because of this, consequently
meinetwegen	on my account, as far as I'm concerned
unseretwegen	on our account
deinetwegen	on your account

Colloquially, **wegen** can also be followed by pronouns in the dative (IO) rather than the genitive:

wegen mir	because of me
wegen uns	because of us
wegen dir	because of you
wegen ihm	because of him

10.3 MASCULINE N-NOUNS

As we just learned, most singular masculine and neuter nouns add **-(e)s** in the genitive. However, there is a group of masculine nouns that don't follow this rule. These nouns add **-(e)n** in all cases, singular and plural, except in the nominative singular, which is the form given below:

der Automat	vending machine	(and other 'imported' nouns ending in -at)
der Bauer	farmer	
der Franzose	Frenchman	(and other nationality designations ending in -e , e.g. der Pole , but NOT der Deutsche , which follows different rules; see section 11.2)
der Held	hero	
der Herr	Mr, gentleman	(adds -n in the singular, and -en in the plural)
der Junge	boy	(the colloquial plural adds -ns throughout)
der Kollege	colleague	
der Kunde	customer	
der Mensch	person, human being, (plural) people	
der Nachbar	neighbour	
der Präsident	president	(and many other 'imported' nouns ending in -ent)
der Soldat	soldier	(see Automat)
der Student	student	(see Präsident)
der Tourist	tourist	(and other 'imported' nouns ending in -ist)

Many other nouns, particularly loanwords from other languages, follow the same pattern. These nouns are noted in the mini-dictionary not by the usual information on the plural, but by **(-n noun)** or **(-en noun)**: e.g. **der Tourist (-en noun)** tourist.

Note that a small group of masculine **n**-nouns ending in **-e** add **-ns** for the singular genitive (and **-n** in all other cases). Here they are in the nominative singular:

der Buchstabe	letter (of the alphabet)
der Gedanke	thought
der Glaube	belief
der Name	name
der Wille	will (determination)

These are marked in the mini-dictionary with **(-ns noun)**.

10.4 MORE ON SEPARABLE-PREFIX VERBS

These verbs have a prefix that can be detached from the verb stem in different verb forms. For example, in the past participle, the **ge-** is inserted between the separable prefix and the stem: e.g. **ausgegangen** (went out, gone out) (see section 9.7).

The same principle applies if the infinitive is preceded by **zu** (to). This is also inserted between the prefix and the stem: e.g. **auszugehen** (to go out). In both cases, the verb form is spoken and written as one word.

When a separable-prefix verb is conjugated, the stem stays in the second position and the prefix detaches and moves to the end of the sentence:

Ich lade meine Freunde für Sonnabend ein. (einladen)

I'm inviting my friends for Saturday.

Er schlägt ein kaltes Mittagessen mit Brot, Käse und Wein vor. (vorschlagen)

He suggests a cold lunch with bread, cheese, and wine.

Ich helfe bei den Vorbereitungen für die Konferenz nicht mit. (mithelfen)

I'm not helping with the preparations for the conference.

Note that **nicht**, which usually comes near the end of a sentence, must come before the separated prefix.

**Ich empfinde gar kein Mitleid mit dieser Frau.
(empfinden)**

10.5 ZU + INFINITIVE

Ich gehe zweimal in der Woche schwimmen.

Nothing can come between **zu** and the infinitive. This is why the **zu** is inserted between the prefix and the verb stem in separable-prefix verbs.

He hopes to come tomorrow.

We are trying to find a new house.

I intend to invite my friends for Saturday.

(1) (a) Er wird immer mir seine Sorgen zu
 zögern, erzählen.

He will always hesitate to tell me his worries.

(b) Ich habe neulich den Chef für
versucht, Montag einzuladen.

I recently tried to invite the boss for Monday.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>(2) (a) Ich werde meinen Freund bitten,
I'll ask my boyfriend</p> <p>(b) Der Arzt hat mich überredet,
The doctor persuaded me</p> | <p>uns ein Picknick vorzubereiten.
to make a picnic for us.</p> <p>wegen des Handgelenks zum Orthopäden zu gehen.
to go to the orthopaedic specialist with my wrist.</p> |
|--|--|

Sentences (1b) and (2a) show how a separable verb allows **zu** to slip between the prefix and verb stem.

Notice how each of these sentences divides into two clear parts. Each part has to remain separate – nothing from one part can stray into the other. In keeping with the rules of word order, the past participle or infinitive has to come last in each respective part.

In the sentences in (1), the subject in the first part – **er** in (a) and **ich** in (b) – is also the implied subject of the second part:

er – zögern – erzählen
ich – versuchen – einladen

This is not the case in the sentences in (2), however, where the implied subject in the second part is the direct object of the first part:

first part

- (a) **ich** (SU) – **bitten** – **meinen Freund** (DO)
(b) **der Arzt** (SU) – **überreden** – **ich** (DO)

second part

- (a) **meinen Freund** (implied SU) – **vorbereiten**
(b) **ich** (implied SU) – **gehen**

Exercise 1



Complete the following by filling each double gap with the correct separable-prefix verb from the column on the right. The short gap in each case is for the separable prefix, the longer gap for the rest of the verb.

Ich ... , eine Party zu geben.	anrufen
Wir sind so viele, also ... ich meine	einladen
Wohnung anders Ich ... nur	einrichten
meine besten Freunde ... , aber wir	mithelfen
sind fünfzig. Diesmal ... meine	vorhaben
Freunde mal nicht Ich will alles	vorschlagen
alleine machen. Um 8 Uhr ... ich	
sie Dann können sie kommen.	
Aber was sagen meine Freunde, sie ...	
stattdessen ... , gar nicht zu essen,	
sondern den ganzen Abend lang zu tanzen.	

10.6 EXPRESSING PURPOSE

In sentences in which the first part makes a statement and the second part explains why, in English we would use 'in order to', 'so as to', or simply 'to'. The equivalent in German is **um**, which is placed at the beginning of the second part of the sentence. Here are some examples based on the sentences from the previous section:

Er wird mich morgen besuchen,	um mir seine Sorgen zu erzählen.
--	---

He will visit me tomorrow	(in order) to tell me his worries.
---------------------------	---------------------------------------

Ich bin zur Chefsekretärin gegangen,	um den Chef für Montag einzuladen.
---	---

I've been to the director's personal assistant	(in order) to invite the boss for Monday.
---	--

Ich werde etwas Aufschnitt kaufen,	um uns ein Picknick vorzubereiten.
---	---

I'm going to buy some sliced meat	(so as) to prepare a picnic for us.
--------------------------------------	--

**Ich muss besonders früh
aufstehen,**

I have to get up particularly
early

**um wegen des
Handgelenks zum
Orthopäden zu gehen.**

(so as) to go to the
orthopaedic specialist
for my wrist.

While it's frequent in English to just use 'to' in this context, the term **um** is essential in German if the second part of the sentence gives the reason for the first.

In sentences with **um**, the implied subject of the second part of the sentence must be the same as in the first part. The two parts can also be switched around:

**Um den Chef für Montag
einzuladen,**

**Um mir seine Sorgen zu
erzählen,**

**bin ich zur Chef-
sekretärin gegangen.**

**wird er mich morgen
besuchen.**

When the order is reversed, the former second part, now first, affects the word order. As we saw in section 7.6, the verb must come second in a sentence, whatever element comes first. The whole phrase starting with **um** counts as one element, so the verb (**bin** and **wird** in the examples above) comes next, followed by the subject (**ich** and **er**).

10.7 OHNE AND STATT

Like **um**, the terms **ohne** (without) and **statt** (instead of) can be used to start the second part of a sentence to provide more information. And like **um**, sentences with **ohne** and **statt** must have the same subject in both parts, and the sequence of the parts can be reversed.

**Ich kann kein Picknick
vorbereiten,**

I can't prepare a picnic

**ohne etwas Aufschnitt
zu kaufen.**

without buying some
sliced meat.

**Er wird mich morgen
besuchen,**

He's going to visit me
tomorrow

**statt mir seine Sorgen am
Telefon zu erzählen.**

instead of telling me his
worries on the telephone.

Exercise 2

- 1 Die Dame geht in die Stadt.
Sie kauft ein.

Die Dame geht in die Stadt, um einzukaufen.

The following pairs of sentences make up a story. Link the two sentences in each pair with **um ... zu**, **ohne ... zu**, or **statt ... zu**, as in the example above.

- 2 Anja steht früh auf.
Sie geht mit ihrem Hund spazieren.
- 3 Mittags kommt sie nach Hause und arbeitet im Garten.
Sie isst nicht.
- 4 Am Nachmittag geht sie ins Kino.
Sie fragt niemanden. (niemand = no one /
jemand = anyone, someone)
- 5 Sie sieht gerne Filme.
Sie kommt auf andere Gedanken.
- 6 Am Abend kommt ihr Freund.
Er will sie ins Restaurant einladen.
- 7 Sie verlässt das Restaurant während des Essens.
Sie bezahlt nicht.
- 8 Er bleibt im Restaurant sitzen und isst beide Portionen.
Er folgt nicht seiner Freundin.
(folgen = to follow)

10.8 THE PASSIVE VOICE

In an active sentence, the subject performs the action of the verb. In the passive voice, the action is performed on the subject. For example:

Active: My father is showing the plans.

Passive: The plans are being shown.

The passive is useful if there is no need to draw particular attention to who or what is performing the action or if this is unknown.

In German, the passive is formed with a conjugated form of the verb **werden** + past participle. Below are some examples in the present:

Die Pläne werden von meinem Vater gezeigt.

The plans are being shown by my father. (note how the agent of the action is introduced by **von**, 'by').

Jetzt werden die Pläne gezeigt.

The plans are now being shown. (who is showing the plans is not important)

Das Haus wird in diesen Tagen eingerichtet.

The house is being furnished at present.

Ich werde oft mitten in der Nacht angerufen.

I'm often rung up in the middle of the night.

One way the passive in German differs from English is that it uses **werden** (to become) as the auxiliary verb rather than **sein** (to be). It also differs in the following two respects:

(1) In English, in the passive voice the direct object or the recipient of the action of the verb (the indirect object) becomes the subject of the sentence:

The slides are being shown.

(In the active voice, 'the slides' would be a direct object – here, they are the subject.)

The guest is being shown the slides.
(In the active voice, 'the guest' would be an indirect object – the recipient of the slides – here, this becomes the subject.)

But in German, the indirect object in a passive sentence cannot become the subject. While a word sequence similar to English is possible, the noun or pronoun must stay in the dative case (IO):

Dem Gast werden die Dias gezeigt.

Even with this word order, the subject remains what would be the direct object in the active sentence, i.e. **die Dias**, as can be seen from the plural verb **werden**.

(2) In German, the passive voice can be formed with verbs without a direct object. It can even be formed without a subject (or with the impersonal **es** as the subject, making it similar to the general 'there is'):

Heute Abend wird gesungen.
or **Es wird heute Abend gesungen.**
There's some singing this evening.

Jetzt wird schnell gegessen!
or **Es wird jetzt schnell gegessen!**
Now it's time to eat quickly!

This means that sentences such as:
The children are now being forgiven.
The students are being helped a lot.

containing verbs that take the dative case in German (see section 4.5) must be translated as follows:

Den Kindern wird jetzt verziehen.
or **Es wird den Kindern jetzt verziehen.**

Den Studenten wird sehr geholfen.
or **Es wird den Studenten sehr geholfen.**

Note that when the passive refers to the future, because both the future tense and the passive are formed with **werden**, this is not normally used twice:

Wir werden nächste Woche in Französisch geprüft (werden).

We're going to be tested in French next week.

10.9 THE PRESENT PERFECT WITH MODAL VERBS

We've seen the construction of sentences with a modal verb as the auxiliary:

Ich muss den Nachbarn helfen.

I have to help the neighbours.

So if the action took place in the past, how would this be turned into the present perfect? In this case, rather than becoming a past participle, the infinitive of the auxiliary verb is used:

Ich habe den Nachbarn helfen müssen.

I have had to help the neighbours.

The infinitive of the auxiliary stands at the end of the sentence, after the infinitive of the main verb (here, **helfen**). The same applies to the other modal verbs: **dürfen, können, mögen, sollen, wollen, and lassen.**

Ich habe meinen Wagen waschen lassen.

I got my car washed.

However, note that all of these verbs have a past participle that is used when they are not auxiliaries: i.e. when they are used alone, without another verb (see B).

A: Kannst du geduldig warten?

Are you able to wait patiently?

B: Nein, das habe ich nie gekonnt.

No, I've never been able to (do) that.

10

Wir haben unser Gepäck am Bahnhof gelassen.

We have left our luggage at the station.

These 'independent' past participles begin with **ge-** and (except **lassen**) end with **-t**: **gedurft, gekonnt, gemocht, gemusst, gesollt, gewollt, and gelassen.**

When **werden** is used as an auxiliary in the passive present perfect, the past participle is simply **worden**, but its independent past participle ('become') is **geworden**:

Die Dias sind von meinem Vater gezeigt worden.

The slides were shown by my father.

Die Kunden sind heutzutage sehr frech geworden.

Customers have become very cheeky these days.

10.10 THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE

As we've seen, Germans are most likely to use the present perfect to refer to any event in the past in everyday conversation.

However, there is a simple (single word) past tense as well, which is used more frequently for the verb **sein** as well as **haben**, which avoids having two forms of the same verb in one sentence necessitated by the present perfect (e.g. **er ist ... gewesen; ich habe ... gehabt**).

The simple past is also often preferred for other auxiliary verbs, as it reduces the number of verbs required in the sentence to two. Compare the following:

present perfect

**Ich bin vier Wochen
krank gewesen.**

I have been/was ill for four weeks.

simple past

**Ich war vier Wochen
krank.**

**Wir haben viel Pech
gehabt.**

We have had/had very bad luck.

Wir hatten viel Pech.

**Ich habe den Nachbarn
helfen müssen.**

I have had/had to help the neighbours.

**Die Dias sind von
meinem Vater
gezeigt worden.**

**Ich musste den
Nachbarn helfen.**

**Die Dias wurden von
meinem Vater gezeigt.**

The slides have been/were shown by my father.

Here is the simple past of **haben**, **sein**, the modal verbs
and the auxiliary **werden**:

	haben	sein
ich/er/sie(she)/es	hatte	war
du (you, inf. sing.)	hattest	warst
wir/Sie/sie(they)	hatten	waren
ihr (you, inf. pl.)	hattet	wart
	dürfen	können
ich/er/sie(she)/es	durfte	konnte
du	durftest	konntest
wir/Sie/sie(they)	durften	konnten
ihr	durftet	konntet
	mögen	müssen
ich/er/sie(she)/es	mochte	musste
du	mochtest	musstest
wir/Sie/sie(they)	mochten	mussten
ihr	mochtet	musstet
	sollen	wollen
ich/er/sie(she)/es	sollte	wollte
du	solltest	wolltest
wir/Sie/sie(they)	sollten	wollten
ihr	solltet	wolltet
	lassen	werden
ich/er/sie(she)/es	ließ	wurde
du	ließest	wurdest
wir/Sie/sie(they)	ließen	wurden
ihr	ließet	wurdet

Note that the first- and third-person singular forms are the same in this tense. Hence, the third-person singular never ends in **-t**, unlike in the present tense.

The conjugation follows three patterns, plus **werden**, which conjugates in a unique way. Two of these are significant for learning German past tenses in general (see section 12.1), while a third is typical of another small group. The four conjugation types are:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 sein, lassen | The stem changes (war, ließ) and is used without any ending. |
| 2 sollen, wollen | The stem stays the same and is followed by -t- and the ending -e . |
| 3 haben, dürfen, können, mögen müssen | The stem changes (hat-, darf-, kann-, moch-, muss-) and is followed by -t- and the ending -e . |
| 4 werden | The stem vowel (wurd-) changes and is followed by the ending -e . |

Pattern **1** is followed by the many German verbs that change stem in the simple past tense (like the English 'come/came'). We'll call these 'new-stem verbs'.

Pattern **2** is the model for most verbs, which simply add **-t-** to the verb stem, followed by an ending. These are 'same-stem verbs' (like the English 'rush/rushed').

Pattern **3** is a mixture of **1** and **2**: the stem changes, plus **-t-** is added, always followed by an ending. These conjugations are somewhat akin to the English 'kneel/knelt' or 'buy/bought'.

VOCABULARY

Some new words for the following conversation:

der	Freund (-e) /	boyfriend /
die	Freundin (-nen)	girlfriend
die	Silvesterfahrt (-en)	New Year's Eve trip
der	Winterprospekt (-e)	winter brochure
	anbieten (II)	to offer
	preiswert	reasonably priced
das	Allgäu	mountainous area in Southern Bavaria
der	Preis (-e)	price
	reichhaltig	varied
der	Ausflug (˘-e)	excursion
die	Abendveranstaltung (-en)	evening entertainment, event
das	Neujahrsfrühstück (-e)	New Year's Day breakfast
der	Sonderpreis (-e)	special price
die	Unterkunft (˘-e)	accommodation
das	Doppelzimmer (-)	double room
das	Einzelzimmer (-)	single room
das	Silvesterfestessen (-)	New Year's Eve banquet
die	Skimöglichkeit (-en)	opportunity for skiing
	sorgen für	to see to
die	Übernachtung (-en)	overnight stay
	hin und zurück	there and back, i.e. return journey
der	Hinweg (-e)	outward journey
die	Rückfahrt (-en)	return journey
das	Gleiche	the same
	unterwegs	on the way
	genügend	sufficiently
	anhalten (II)	to stop, to pull up
	jeweils	each time
	einnehmen (II)	to eat, to take, to consume

die	Erfrischung (-en)	refreshment
der	Gasthof (˘e)	inn
der	Löwe (-n noun)	lion
	unterbringen (II)	to accommodate
der	Grundpreis (-e)	basic price
	enthalten (I)	to contain, to include
die	Dusche (-n)	shower
der	Zuschlag (˘e)	additional charge
	nicht in Frage kommen	to be out of the question
die	Veranstaltung (-en)	event (entertainment)
	einbegriffen	included
der	Geschmack (˘e)	taste
	tagsüber	during the daytime
	gesellig	sociable
das	Beisammensein	being with other people
der	Gesellschaftsraum (˘e)	lounge
	genießen (I)	to enjoy
die	Möglichkeit (-en)	opportunity
das	Skifahren	skiing
das	Festessen (-)	banquet
	tanzen	to dance
der	Tanz (˘e)	dance
	veranstalten (I)	to arrange, to put on
	nach Wunsch	as required, to order
das	Feuerwerk	fireworks
	loslassen (II)	to set off
das	Sektfrühstück	champagne breakfast
	klingen	to sound
	beschränken (I)	to limit
	anstrengend	energetic, strenuous
der	Teilnehmer (-) /	participant
	die Teilnehmerin (-nen)	
die	Leute	people
das	Gegenteil	opposite
die	Gruppe (-n)	group
die	goldene Hochzeit (-en)	golden wedding
	feiern	to celebrate
	besprechen (I)	to discuss, talk over

CONVERSATION

Enquiring at a coach tour company about a short New Year holiday

JUNGER MANN **Meine Freundin und ich sind daran interessiert, eine Silvesterfahrt zu machen.**

BERATERIN **Gut, ich zeige Ihnen unseren Winterprospekt. Wir bieten dieses Jahr eine sehr preiswerte Fahrt mit Luxusbus nach Oberstdorf im Allgäu an, sieben Tage vom 28. Dezember bis zum 3. Januar inklusive.**

JUNGER MANN **[Liest aus dem Winterprospekt]**

**7 Tage Silvesterfahrt mit
Luxusbus ins Allgäu**

5 Nächte in Oberstdorf

**reichhaltiges Programm mit
Ausflügen, Abendveranstaltungen
und Neujahrsektfrühstück**

Sonderpreis €790,-

Unterkunft in Doppelzimmern

Einzelzimmer €30,- extra

Silvesterfestessen €85,- extra

Skimöglichkeiten

JUNGER MANN **Was wird da alles für den Preis angeboten?**

BERATERIN **Ja, da ist erst mal die Fahrt hin und zurück im Luxusbus. Für alles wird gesorgt ... eine Übernachtung in einem netten Hotel auf dem Hinweg und das Gleiche auf der Rückfahrt ...**

JUNGER MANN **Wie wird unterwegs gegessen?**

BERATERIN **Es wird natürlich genügend oft angehalten, und das Mittagessen wird**

10

jeweils während einer längeren Pause in einem Gasthof eingenommen. Andere Erfrischungen werden im Bus serviert ... Ja, und in Oberstdorf selbst wird man im Gasthof Zum Löwen untergebracht. Der Grundpreis enthält die Unterbringung in Doppelzimmern mit Dusche und Toilette, aber es werden auch Einzelzimmer angeboten für einen Zuschlag von €30,-. Aber das kommt für Sie wohl nicht in Frage ...?

JUNGER MANN Was für Veranstaltungen sind im Preis einbegriffen?

BERATERIN Für jeden Geschmack wird gesorgt ... Tagsüber werden drei kleinere Ausflüge gemacht, und jeden Abend wird getanzt, oder man kann das gesellige Beisammensein in der Bar oder im Gesellschaftsraum genießen. Es gibt auch Möglichkeiten zum Skifahren, aber das muss extra bezahlt werden.

JUNGER MANN Und zu Silvester und am Neujahrstag selbst ...?

BERATERIN Silvester gibt es Tanz, und um elf Uhr wird eine besondere Show veranstaltet. Silvester wird auch um acht Uhr ein Festessen nach Wunsch serviert für einen Zuschlag von €85,-. Um Mitternacht wird dann das Feuerwerk losgelassen. Am 1. Januar wird ab neun Uhr ein Sektführstück eingenommen.

JUNGER MANN Das klingt alles sehr schön. Und sind noch Plätze frei?

BERATERIN Ja, wir haben noch sechs Plätze frei. Wir mussten die Zahl der Teilnehmer wegen der Größe unseres Busses auf dreißig beschränken.

JUNGER MANN Bei solch einem anstrengenden Programm sind die anderen Teilnehmer doch bestimmt alles junge Leute ...

BERATERIN **O nein, ganz im Gegenteil! Sechzehn der Teilnehmer fahren als Gruppe, um Silvester eine goldene Hochzeit zu feiern.**

JUNGER MANN **Oh! Das muss ich doch noch mal mit meiner Freundin besprechen ...**

TRANSLATION

YOUNG MAN My girlfriend and I are interested in doing a New Year's Eve trip.

ADVISOR Right, I'll show you our winter brochure. This year we're offering a very reasonable trip by luxury coach to Oberstdorf in the Allgäu, seven days from 28th December to 3rd January inclusive.

YOUNG MAN [Reads from the winter brochure]

7 day New Year's Eve trip
to the Allgäu by luxury coach

5 nights in Oberstdorf

Varied programme with excursions,
evening entertainment and
New Year's Day champagne breakfast

Special price €790,–

Accommodation in double rooms
Single room €30,– extra
New Year's Eve banquet €85,– extra
Opportunities for skiing

YOUNG MAN What sort of things do you get for the price?

ADVISOR Well, first of all there's the outward and return journey in a luxury coach. Everything is taken care of ... an overnight stop in a nice hotel on the way out and the same on the return journey ...

YOUNG MAN How are the meals provided on the journey?

10

- ADVISOR There are plenty of stops, of course, and there is a fairly long break for lunch at a hotel. Other refreshments are served in the coach ... and in Oberstdorf itself you're accommodated in the Lion Inn. The basic price includes accommodation in double rooms with shower and toilet, but single rooms are also available at an extra charge of €30. But you wouldn't be interested in that, I suppose ...?
- YOUNG MAN What sort of entertainments are included in the price?
- ADVISOR Every taste is catered for ... In the daytime there are three shortish excursions, and there's dancing every evening, or you can socialize in the bar or the lounge. There are also opportunities to ski, but you have to pay extra for that.
- YOUNG MAN And on New Year's Eve and New Year's Day themselves ...?
- ADVISOR On New Year's Eve there's a dance, and at eleven o'clock a special show will be put on. And on New Year's Eve there will also be a banquet served to order at eight o'clock at an extra charge of €85. Then at midnight the fireworks will be set off. On 1st January from nine o'clock onwards you can have a champagne breakfast.
- YOUNG MAN That all sounds very nice. And are there still places available?
- ADVISOR Yes, we still have six places left. We have had to restrict the number of participants to thirty because of the size of our coach.
- YOUNG MAN With such a busy programme I suppose the other participants are all young people ...
- ADVISOR Oh no, just the opposite! Sixteen of the participants are going as a group to celebrate a golden wedding on New Year's Eve.
- YOUNG MAN Oh! I'll have to discuss this again with my girlfriend ...

- *terms for expressing quantity ('all the', 'a little', 'many', 'another', etc.) or that something is the same*
- *adjectives used as nouns*
- *linking words that affect the word order of a subordinate clause*
- *reflexive pronouns ('myself', 'yourself', etc.)*
- *reflexive verbs*

11.1 TERMS THAT EXPRESS QUANTITY

By now you'll be getting used to the fact that words used with or to replace nouns decline, as we saw with terms like **dieser** (this), **jeder** (every), **meiner** (my), etc. (sections 7.1–7.2). So you won't be surprised to hear that terms that refer to the quantity of a noun, or its similarity to something else, also inflect.

The declensions of these terms vary not just according to gender, number, and case, but also the type of noun in terms of whether it is uncountable (e.g. 'water') or countable (e.g. 'shop').

The key terms are listed below in the categories that affect how they decline, with references to the sets of endings they take (set 1, set 2, or set 3 from section 7.3, or the genitive endings in section 10.1).

(a) Before any type of noun

the same (identical)	derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, etc.	Both parts of the word decline: the definite article with its usual endings, and selb- with set 1 endings.
the same (alike)	der gleich, etc.	The definite article declines, as does gleich , with set 1 endings.
all (of) the, the whole (of the)	der ganz, etc.	The definite article declines, as does ganz , with set 1 or 2 endings.

Ich bin in derselben* Gruppe wie du.

I'm in the same group as you.

Ich habe das gleiche* Kleid wie du gekauft.

I've bought the same dress as you.

Die ganze Arbeit hat er alleine geschafft.

He's managed all the work ('the entire work') on his own.

Meine ganzen Bücher sind nass geworden.

All my books got wet.

Ein ganzes Jahr hat er dafür gebraucht.

He took a whole year for it.

* In practice there is a lot of overlap between **derselbe** and **der gleich** (in their various declensions).

(b) Before uncountable nouns

little	wenig	No ending required.
a little	etwas	No ending required.
some	einige , etc.	Takes set 3 endings.
a bit of	ein bisschen	The indefinite article (ein) declines with its usual endings (bisschen is a neuter noun).
a drop of	ein Tropfen	The indefinite article declines with its usual endings (Tropfen m.).
enough	genug genügend	No ending required.
much, a lot of	viel	No ending required.
all (of), etc.	der ganz , etc.	See section (a).
all (the)	alles , etc.	Takes set 1 endings, but before m. and n. n -nouns ending in -(e)s , takes -en in the genitive.
all that/this/ my, etc.	all der/dieser all mein , etc.	has no ending, but the adjective declines.

Examples:

für wenig Geld for little money

mit etwas Salz with a little salt

vor einiger Zeit some time ago

mit einem bisschen Papier with a bit of paper
mit einem Tropfen Öl with a drop of oil
Wir haben genug Wein. We have enough wine.
bei viel Arbeit with a lot of work
bei allem guten Willen with the best will in the world
trotz allen Komforts in spite of all the comfort
wegen all der Unruhe because of all that noise

(c) Before countable nouns in the singular

the same	derselbe , etc.	See section (a).
any, some or other	irgendein	Takes the same endings as ein .
another (one more)	noch ein	ein declines with its usual endings.
another (a different one)	ein ander , etc.	ein declines with its usual endings, ander takes set 2 endings.
the whole (of the)	der ganz , etc.	See section (a).

Heute kommt irgendein Vertreter von der Versicherung.

Some representative or other from the insurance company is coming today.

Heute kommt noch ein Vertreter von der Versicherung.

Another (one more) representative from the insurance company is coming today.

Heute kommt ein anderer Vertreter von der Versicherung.

Another (different) representative from the insurance company is coming today.

(d) Before countable nouns in the plural

a pair of	ein Paar	The indefinite article declines with its usual endings (Paar is a neuter noun). The following noun has
-----------	-----------------	--

the two	der beiden , etc.	the same case. The definite article declines with its usual endings, beiden takes set 1 endings.
both	beide , etc.	Takes set 3 endings.
a few	ein paar	No endings, though a following noun in the dative may need -(e)n .
some	einige , etc.	Takes set 3 endings.
many	mehrere , etc.	Takes set 3 endings.
enough	viele , etc.	Takes set 3 endings.
	genug	See section (b).
	genügend	
all (of) the	alle , etc.	Takes set 3 endings, but any following adjective adds -en in all cases.

Examples:

von einem Paar alten Schuhen

from an old pair of shoes

wegen der beiden Damen

because of the two ladies

mit beiden Händen

with both hands

vor ein paar Wochen

a few weeks ago

für einige gute Freunde

for some good friends

für mehrere gute Freunde

for several good friends

für viele gute Freunde

for many good friends

für alle guten Freunde

for all the good friends

11.2 USING ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS

Adjectives are often used as nouns in German. While in English this is possible, it is typically limited to denoting collective categories of people (e.g. 'the rich', 'the disadvantaged', 'the British') and some abstract categories ('the good, the bad, the indifferent'). But in German this usage is almost unrestricted.

Here's an example from the last conversation (page 151) that works in both languages:

das Gleiche auf der Rückfahrt
the same on the return journey

Here the adjective **gleich**, given an initial capital letter, has become a neuter noun. This is the gender for all adjectival nouns that do not refer specifically to a male or a female.

Adjectival nouns take the adjective endings described in section 7.3. For instance, 'a German' is **ein Deutscher** if a man, but **eine Deutsche** if a woman, because the noun is derived from the adjective **deutsch**. In the mini-dictionary, adjectival nouns are marked (adj.) to show that they require adjective endings.

Adjectival nouns can be created as needed. Many of them derive from the past participle (the -ed form) or present participle (the -ing form) of a verb (for the latter, see section 13.1). For example, the past participle **gefangen** (caught, captured) used as an adjectival noun becomes **der/die Gefangene** (the prisoner).

The present participle **überlebend** (surviving) used as a noun becomes **der/die Überlebende** (survivor).

Another common way to use adjectives as nouns is in combination with **etwas** (something) or **nichts** (nothing), e.g. 'something special' or 'nothing surprising'. In these situations, the adjective has the endings given in section 7.3, set 3.

Die Stunde soll mit etwas Einfachem anfangen.

The lesson should start with something simple.

Alles war ruhig, nichts Wesentliches ist geschehen.

Everything was quiet; nothing important happened.

But with **alles** (everything), as it already has the neuter ending **-es**, an adjectival noun takes the endings indicated in section 7.3, set 1:

Ich wünsche dir alles Gute zum Geburtstag.

I wish you all the best for your birthday.

In allem Praktischen war er der Klassenbeste.

In everything practical he was the best in the class.

11.3 LINKING CLAUSES

As we've seen, a sentence can consist of different parts that give extra information about the main clause. For example, a phrase with **zu** + infinitive may be added to the main clause, or a phrase with **um** (in order to), **ohne** (without), or **statt** (instead of) followed by **zu** + infinitive.

As well as such additional phrases, there may be a subordinate clause. This is a group of words that contains a subject and a conjugated verb that is linked to a main clause.

(1) The simplest way of linking a subordinate clause to a main clause in German is just to attach them with no linking word. (However, note that in German, a comma is required in between the clauses.) This has no effect on the word order of either clause. For example:

Der Arzt sagt, ich soll nur Fisch oder mageres Fleisch essen.

The doctor says I should only eat fish or lean meat.

Die haben gemeint, ich soll zum Arzt gehen.

They said I should go to the doctor.

In both of these examples, the main clause comes first.

But if the order of the clauses is reversed, the word order in the main clause changes:

Ich soll nur Fisch oder mageres Fleisch essen, sagt der Arzt.

This is because the entire subordinate clause becomes the first element in the sentence, so the verb in the main clause needs to be in the second position.

(2) The scope for joining clauses is immeasurably widened by the use of linking words, or conjunctions, to introduce the subordinate clause. Here are some of the most common conjunctions:

und	and
aber	but
oder	or
sondern	but rather (on the contrary)
sondern ... auch	but ... also

These can be used to join comparable words, as well as phrases, clauses or even sentences. They function like their English equivalents and generally have no effect on the word order:

Es gibt auch Möglichkeiten zum Skifahren, aber das muss extra bezahlt werden.

There are also opportunities to ski, but you'll have to pay extra for that.

If any of these conjunctions are used to link sentences in which the word order has already been affected by some other factor (see section 11.4), the new word order is retained for the sentence attached by **und**, **aber**, etc.

Note that the general conjunction for 'but' is **aber**, whereas **sondern** is used in two specific contexts:

- If the sense is 'not only ... but also', the German is **nicht nur ... sondern auch**.

- If the sense is 'not ... but rather', the German is **nicht** (or another negative, such as **kein**) ... **sondern**:

Er schickt keinen Brief, sondern er will mit mir persönlich sprechen.

He's not sending a letter but intends to speak to me personally.

(3) Another key conjunction is **denn**, whose meaning is explanatory: it can translate to 'as', 'since', 'because', or 'for'. This linking word is a rule unto itself. Like the conjunctions in (2) it doesn't affect word order, but it can't link anything except sentences. The clause it introduces must come after the main clause.

Er kann mir nicht böse sein, denn er hat selbst Schuld daran.

He can't be cross with me since it's his own fault.

Today there is a clear tendency in spoken German, as opposed to written German, to use the conjunction **weil** (see section 11.4) in place of **denn**. In the same way, when it introduces a clause, it doesn't affect the word order:

Ich kann ihm nicht böse sein, weil ich habe selbst Schuld daran.

I can't be cross with him because it's my own fault.

11.4 LINKING WORDS AFFECTING WORD ORDER

(1) Relative pronouns (who, that, which, whose, etc.)

	singular			plural	
	m.	f.	n.	m. f. n.	
SU	der	die	das	die	who, which, that
DO	den	die	das	die	who(m), which, that
IO	dem	der	dem	denen	to/for whom, to/for which
poss.	dessen	deren	dessen	deren	of whom, of which, whose

The forms of the German relative pronoun are the same as the definite article (section 9.1), plus **dessen** and **deren** for the genitive case (indicated here with the abbreviation for possession). They introduce a clause that provides additional information about a noun or pronoun previously mentioned in the main clause.

The relative pronoun must agree with the gender (m., f., or n.) or number (singular or plural) of the noun it refers to, but the choice of case is determined by the grammatical function of the relative pronoun (whether it is a subject, direct or indirect object, the object of a preposition, etc.).

SU **Ich bringe meinen Sohn, der nach Berlin fährt, zum Bahnhof.**

I'm taking my son, who is going to Berlin, to the station.

Das Fleisch, das auf dem Tisch liegt, kannst du für den Hund nehmen.

You can take the meat that's on the table for the dog.

DO **Mein Chef, für den ich seit zehn Jahren arbeite, ist sehr unsympathisch.**

My boss, for whom I've been working for ten years, is very unpleasant.

Wir haben den Urlaub, den wir auf Zypern verbracht haben, ganz toll gefunden.

We found the holiday (that) we spent in Cyprus really fantastic.

- IO **Meine Schwiegertochter, der ich gestern Blumen geschenkt habe, hat sie zum Blumengeschäft zurückgebracht.**

My daughter-in-law, to whom I gave some flowers yesterday, took them back to the florist's.

Der Verwandte, bei dem ich wohne, ist wie ein Vater zu mir.

The relative who I live with ('with whom I live') is like a father to me.

- poss. **Hans, dessen Frau aus Ägypten kommt, lernt Arabisch.**

Hans, whose wife comes from Egypt, is learning Arabic.

Die Frau, deren Auto falsch geparkt ist, spricht mit dem Polizisten.

The woman whose car is illegally parked is talking to the policeman.

As seen in all these examples, the conjugated verb in the clause introduced by the relative pronoun must be placed at the end of the clause. This rule applies to all the types of clauses described in this section.

Finally, when the relative pronoun follows a preposition, and if it refers to a noun that is not a living being, the alternative **wo(r)-** can be attached in front of the preposition. (This is like **da(r)-** described in section 8.8.)

Die Fehler, über die ich gerade lache, sind eigentlich überhaupt nicht witzig.

or

Die Fehler, worüber ich gerade lache, sind eigentlich überhaupt nicht witzig.

The mistakes I'm just laughing about aren't actually funny at all.

(2) Subordinating conjunctions (that, whether, when, etc.)

Other words that can introduce a subordinate clause include **dass** (that), **ob** (whether), **wann** (when), **was** (what), **warum** (why), **welcher** etc. (which), **wer** (whoever), **wen** (whom), **wessen** (whose), **wem** (to whom), **wie** (as), and **wo** (where). These enable the entire clause to be the subject or direct object of the main clause:

SU **Dass wir heute Abend kein Essen im Haus haben, ist nicht meine Schuld.**

or

Es ist nicht meine Schuld, dass wir heute Abend kein Essen im Haus haben.

It's not my fault that we have no food in the house this evening.

DO **Kannst du mir sagen, ob er morgen kommt?**
Can you tell me whether he's coming tomorrow?

SU **Wann er morgen aufsteht, ist vollkommen egal.**

or

Es ist vollkommen egal, wann er morgen aufsteht.

It's completely immaterial when he gets up tomorrow.

DO **Weit du zufllig, wessen Regenschirm hier liegt?**

Do you know by chance whose umbrella this is here?

This includes contexts where the clause may not appear to be the object of the main clause, although in fact it is, because an optional word has been omitted:

Ich bin froh (darber), dass er endlich zu Hause ist.
I'm glad (about the fact) that he's home at last.

Here, in English 'about the fact' sounds artificial, but including the optional **darber** would sound natural in

German. This way of producing a 'complete' main clause uses **da(r)-** to stand for the object of a preposition (**über**). The full object is then stated in the clause introduced by **dass**.

In situations when the preposition is essential to the meaning of an idiom, the construction with **da(r)-** in the main clause is mandatory, as in the following:

Wir sind dafür, dass das Licht ausgemacht wird.

We are for the light being switched off.

Mein Vater ist dagegen, dass ich den Führerschein mache.

My father is against me taking my driving test.

Here the sense depends entirely on **für** and **gegen**, but there are also many combinations of verb + preposition and adjective + preposition where, though the sense is clear from the verb or adjective, usage requires the preposition to be stated (and therefore **da(r)-** in the main clause). Examples include **bestehen auf** (to insist on) and **einverstanden mit** (in agreement with):

Ich bestehe darauf, dass er sofort bezahlt.

I insist on him paying immediately.

Er ist damit einverstanden, dass sie den Führerschein macht.

He's in agreement with her taking her driving test.

Nor is the **da(r)-** + preposition construction limited to contexts where the subordinate clause is introduced by **dass**. For example, the expression **abhängen von** (to depend on) is often followed by a clause introduced by **ob**, **wo**, **wie**, etc.:

Meine Entscheidung hängt davon ab, ob der Versuch gelingt.

My decision depends on whether the attempt succeeds.

By the way, do not confuse **dass** with **das**; **dass** is always a conjunction.

Exercise 1

Revise the following mini-story by using **dass** to introduce each subordinate clause. The first one has been done for you.

- 1 Martin schlägt vor, Paul soll ihm helfen. →
Martin schlägt vor, dass Paul ihm helfen soll.
- 2 Paul bittet darum, Martin soll solche Vorschläge nicht machen.
- 3 Martin besteht darauf, Paul soll endlich mal etwas tun.
- 4 Paul findet die Arbeit so anstrengend, er verletzt sein Handgelenk plötzlich.
- 5 Jetzt hat Martin solches Mitleid, er schickt Paul zum Arzt.
- 6 Der Arzt sieht sofort, Paul ist einfach faul!

(3) Temporal and causal subordinating conjunctions

These fulfil the same function at the beginning of a clause as a preposition does before a noun. One or two are identical or nearly identical to the equivalent prepositions:

Bis fünf Uhr ...	(bis preposition)
Until five o'clock ...	
Bis er kommt, ...	(bis conjunction)
Until he comes ...	
Während des Konzerts ...	(während prep.)
During the concert ...	
Während das Orchester spielt, ...	(während conj.)
While the orchestra is playing ...	
Nach dem Essen ...	(nach preposition)
After the meal ...	
Nachdem wir gegessen haben, ...	(nachdem conj.)
After we have eaten ...	
Vor Weihnachten ...	(vor preposition)
Before Christmas ...	
Bevor wir anfangen, ...	(bevor conjunction)
Before we begin ...	

Others are more remote from the preposition with the equivalent meaning:

Wegen des schlechten Wetters ... (**wegen** preposition)

Because of the bad weather ...

Weil das Wetter schlecht ist, ... (**weil** conj.)

Because the weather is bad ...

Trotz meiner Erkältung ... (**trotz** preposition)

In spite of my cold ...

Obwohl ich erkältet bin, ... (**obwohl** conj.)

Although I have a cold ...

These conjunctions that have similar meanings to prepositions relate either to (a) time or (b) causality. Here are some of the most frequent:

(a) Time

als	when (single period or point of time in the past)
bevor	before
bis	until
nachdem	after
seitdem	since
sobald	as soon as
während	while
wenn	whenever (repeated periods or points of time in the past or present)

(b) Causal connection

da	as, since
damit	so that, in order that (purpose)
obwohl	although
ohne dass	without
so dass	so that (effect), with the result that
statt dass	instead of
während	whereas
weil	because
wenn	if
wo	seeing that

Note that **so dass** (so that) is used only where a consequence is being referred to:

Ich habe meinen Hausschlüssel verloren, so dass ich nicht ins Haus komme.

I've lost my front door key, so (that) I can't get into the house.

To convey purpose or intention, use **damit**:

Er hat das Schloss ausgetauscht, damit ich mit meinem Hausschlüssel nicht ins Haus komme.

He's changed the lock so that I can't get into the house with my front door key. (i.e. in order to prevent me)

With the terms **ohne** (without) and **statt** (instead) (see section 10.7), if the subject of the subordinate clause is different from the subject of the main clause, they need to be followed by **dass**:

Ich kann kaum anfangen zu lesen, ohne dass mich eins der Kinder stört.

I can barely start reading without one of the children disturbing me.

Meine Eltern haben mir den Englischkurs bezahlt, statt dass ich mein eigenes Geld dafür nehmen musste.

My parents paid for the English course for me instead of my having to use my own money for it.

Exercise 2



Rewrite the following so that each contains a clause introduced by **bevor**, **bis**, **nachdem**, **obwohl**, **während**, or **weil**, as appropriate. The first one has been done for you.

- 1 Vor dem Essen muss man die Hände waschen. →
Bevor man isst, muss man die Hände waschen.
- 2 Nach dem Essen soll man eigentlich nicht schlafen.
- 3 Während des Essens darf man nicht zu viel reden.
- 4 Trotz des vielen Redens hat er eigentlich nicht viel gesagt.
- 5 Wegen des schönen Wetters müssen wir endlich im Garten arbeiten.
- 6 Bis zum Anfang des Programms kannst du noch schön in der Küche helfen!
- 7 Wegen deines hohen Blutdrucks musst du weniger arbeiten.
- 8 Trotz seiner starken Schmerzen läuft er jeden Tag.
(stark = strong; der Schmerz = pain)

11.5 REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

A reflexive pronoun refers back to the subject of the verb, e.g. 'myself', 'yourself', 'themselves', etc.

In German, these decline in the accusative (DO) and, if there's another object, the dative (IO). Their forms are the same as the personal pronouns in these cases, except in the third-person and the formal, which are **sich**:

	DO	IO
myself	mich	mir
yourself (informal sing.)	dich	dir
himself, herself, itself, oneself	sich	sich
ourselves	uns	uns
yourselves (informal pl.)	euch	euch
themselves	sich	sich
yourself, yourselves (formal)	sich	sich

Wir kaufen uns für nächsten Sommer einen Wohnwagen. (IO)

We're buying ourselves a caravan for next summer.

Du siehst furchtbar müde aus, du musst dich mehr schonen. (DO)

You look terribly tired. You have to take it easy ('spare yourself more').

In the third person and formal, **sich** is used for both cases:

Meine Eltern haben mir den Brief nicht gegeben, sondern ihn für sich behalten. (DO)

My parents didn't give me the letter but kept it for themselves.

Mein Bruder hat sich einen neuen Sportwagen angeschafft. (IO)

My brother bought himself a new sports car.

Wenn Sie sich nicht etwas mehr schonen, machen Sie sich kaputt. (DO)

If you don't take it easier ('spare yourself a bit more', you'll wear yourself out.

(Note that in German, the pronoun in 'to buy oneself' is an indirect object, in the sense 'to buy for oneself'.)

The plural reflexive pronouns can also mean 'each other, one another':

Weil wir im selben Alter sind, haben wir uns sofort geduzt.

Because we're the same age, we addressed each other with 'du' immediately.

In German, reflexive pronouns are required in all contexts where the pronoun relates to the subject of the sentence, even when English would not use a reflexive pronoun. Notice in the following examples that **sich** is used rather than **ihm** (him, dative) or **Sie** (you, accusative):

Er hat nicht genug Geld bei sich.

He doesn't have enough money on him ('himself').

Jetzt haben Sie Ihren besten Freund gegen sich.

Now you have your best friend against you ('yourself').

Lastly, the German equivalent of the English 'myself' etc. used to emphasize a point is **selbst**:

Probier diesen Kuchen, ich habe ihn selbst gemacht.

Try this cake – I made it myself.

11.6 REFLEXIVE VERBS

Certain verbs in German are always used with a reflexive pronoun. Some of these correspond to verbs in English:

Er hat sich verletzt und muss zum Arzt (gehen).

He hurt himself and has to go to the doctor.

However, reflexive verbs are far more common in German, so there are a number of verbs that require a reflexive pronoun where you would not expect one in English. Let's look at some of these.

(1) The equivalent of 'to get' + past participle in English is conveyed by a reflexive verb, such as:

to get annoyed

to get dressed

to get drunk

to get excited

to get lost

sich ärgern

sich anziehen (II)

sich betrinken (I)

sich aufregen (II)

sich verirren (I)

sich verlaufen (I)

sich vorbereiten (II)

sich ausziehen (II)

sich gewöhnen (an) (I)

to get ready

to get undressed

to get used/accustomed (to)

As well as situations of getting oneself ready, such as:

to shave

to wash

sich rasieren

sich waschen

In a clause where the verb comes last, the reflexive pronoun can come immediately after the conjunction, even before the subject noun to which it relates.

Während sich mein Bruder wäscht (or mein Bruder sich wäscht), ziehe ich mich an.

While my brother's washing, I'll get dressed.

However, if the subject of the clause is itself a pronoun, it must precede the reflexive pronoun:

Während er sich wäscht, ziehe ich mich an.

While he's washing, I'll get dressed.

(2) The equivalent of 'to be' + past participle (or an adjective with a similar meaning), where the verb often describes a state of mind. Some common examples include:

to be ashamed	sich schämen
to be embarrassed	sich genieren
to be frightened (of)	sich fürchten (vor)
to be interested (in)	sich interessieren (für)
to be pleased (at)	sich freuen (über)
to be surprised	sich wundern

Er bittet seine Mutter nicht um Geld, weil er sich geniert.

He doesn't ask his mother for money because he's embarrassed.

Er findet die Ferien langweilig, denn er interessiert sich für nichts.

He finds the holidays boring, since he's not interested in anything.

Ich gratuliere, ich freue mich sehr über Ihren Erfolg.

I congratulate (you). I'm very pleased at your success.

Ich wundere mich, dass du bei so schönem Wetter im Haus bleibst.

I'm surprised that you're staying inside the house in such lovely weather.

(3) A number of verbs that are more difficult to categorize, but some of which refer to mental states or actions related to feelings, etc.:

to apologize	sich entschuldigen (I)
to approach	sich nähern
to be, to be located	sich befinden (I)
to catch a cold	sich erkälten (I)
to complain	sich beklagen (I)
to feel (e.g. sad)	sich fühlen
to hurry	sich beeilen (I)
to imagine (surmise)	sich (IO) einbilden (II)
(envision)	sich (IO) vorstellen (II)
to long (for)	sich sehnen (nach)
to look forward (to)	sich freuen (auf)
to remember	sich erinnern (an) (I)
to say thank you, to express one's thanks	sich bedanken (I)

**Der Junge ist noch so klein, ich habe ihn mir
größer vorgestellt.**

The boy is still so small. I imagined him taller.

Ich habe Hunger, ich freue mich sehr auf das Essen.

I'm hungry. I'm really looking forward to the meal
(literally, 'to the food').

(4) Some ideas are conveyed in German by impersonal reflexive phrases with the subject **es**, for example:

to be, to be about, to be a matter of	sich handeln um
--	------------------------

**Ich muss Sie leider stören, es handelt sich um
Ihren Sohn ...**

I'm sorry to have to trouble you; it's about your son ...

**Bei der Silvesterfahrt handelt es sich um eine
Sieben-Tage-Tour.**

The New Year's Eve trip is (a matter of) a seven-day tour.

Im Allgäu lebt es sich sehr angenehm.

Life is very pleasant in the Allgäu.

VOCABULARY

Here are some new words from this week and for the conversation that follows:

der Schmerz (-en)	pain
stark	strong
der Fehler (-)	fault
sich beschweren (I)	to complain
erscheinen (I)	to appear
der Kassenbon (-s)	sales receipt
der Kauf (˘e)	buying, purchase
die Reklamation (-en)	complaint (here implying replacement or refund)
der Aufkleber (-)	sticker
der Anfang (˘e)	beginning
pfeifen	to whistle
der Pfeifton	whistling
auftauchen (II)	to turn up, to appear
der Ton (˘e)	sound
sich (DO) anhören (II)	to sound
das Gerät (-e)	(piece of) equipment
überhaupt	at all, anyway
die Ordnung	order
einwandfrei	perfect
genau	precisely, for certain
versuchen (I)	to try
allerdings	although, however
ersetzen (I)	to refund
das Exemplar (-e)	copy
vorrätig	in stock
bestellen (I)	to order
sich (IO) anhören (II)	to listen to
reichen	to hand
sich vertun (I)	to make a mistake, to slip up

CONVERSATION

A customer returns a faulty CD to the shop

VERKÄUFER **Ja, bitte schön?**

KUNDIN **Guten Tag! Ich habe mir vorgestern bei Ihnen eine CD mit Popmusik gekauft, die leider einige Defekte hat. Da die CD ziemlich teuer war, wollte ich mich jetzt beschweren.**

VERKÄUFER **Um was für eine CD handelt es sich denn?**

KUNDIN **Es ist das neueste Konzert von den Pur-Tops, das gerade erst erschienen ist.**

VERKÄUFER **Darf ich mal den Kassenbon sehen, den Sie beim Kauf bekommen haben, denn ohne Bon gibt es keine Reklamation.**

KUNDIN **Das Dumme ist, dass ich den Bon einfach nicht finden kann, aber Sie sehen, der Aufkleber mit dem Preis befindet sich noch auf der Hülle.**

VERKÄUFER **Ja, aber trotzdem ... Also, um welche Defekte handelt es sich denn?**

KUNDIN **Also, am Anfang gibt es einen hohen Pfeifton, der immer wieder auftaucht. Und dann hat die CD Stellen, wo man überhaupt nichts hört. Und wenn mal die Musik da ist, liegt das Ganze viel zu hoch im Ton.**

VERKÄUFER **Das hört sich nicht gut an, aber ist Ihr Gerät denn überhaupt in Ordnung?**

KUNDIN **O ja, das Gerät ist einwandfrei. Das weiß ich ganz genau, weil mein Bruder, der Musik studiert, seine CDs gespielt hat, nachdem ich es mit dieser versucht habe.**

VERKÄUFER **Na gut. Ich kann allerdings kein Geld ersetzen, sondern Ihnen nur ein neues Exemplar derselben CD geben, wenn wir sie noch vorrätig haben. Sonst muss ich sie bestellen ... Aber erst muss ich mir selbst die CD anhören.**

- KUNDIN **Bitte schön. [Sie reicht ihm die CD-Hülle und er macht sie auf.]**
- VERKÄUFER **Aber das ist doch kein Pur-Tops-Konzert, sondern das Klarinettenquintett von Mozart!**
- KUNDIN **O, da muss ich mich aber entschuldigen, ich habe mich vertan! Ich habe die Falsche mitgebracht!**

TRANSLATION

- ASSISTANT Yes, can I help you?
- CUSTOMER Hello. The day before yesterday I bought a CD of pop music here (lit. 'at yours'), which unfortunately is faulty. As the CD was rather expensive, I wanted to make a complaint.
- ASSISTANT What sort of CD is it?
- CUSTOMER It's the latest concert by the Pur-Tops, which has only just come out.
- ASSISTANT Can I see the sales receipt that you got at the time of purchase, since without a receipt there's no refund (lit. 'claim').
- CUSTOMER The stupid thing is that I just can't find the receipt, but you can see that the sticker with the price on it is still on the case.
- ASSISTANT Yes, but still ... So what were the faults?
- CUSTOMER Well, at the beginning there's a high-pitched whistling sound that keeps coming back. And then there are places on the CD where you can't hear anything at all. And when the music actually is there, everything is pitched much too high.
- ASSISTANT That doesn't sound good, but is your equipment actually in order?
- CUSTOMER Oh yes, the equipment is perfect. I know that for certain, because my brother, who's a music student, played his CDs after I tried to play this one ('with this one have tried').

- ASSISTANT All right then. However, I can't refund cash but only give you a new copy of the same CD, if we still have it in stock. Otherwise I'll have to order it ... But first I need to listen to the CD myself.
- CUSTOMER Here you are. [She hands him the CD case and he opens it.]
- ASSISTANT But this isn't a Pur-Tops concert, it's Mozart's Clarinet Quintet!
- CUSTOMER Oh, I really must apologize. I've made a mistake! I've brought the wrong one!

Week 12

- *more on the formation and uses of the simple past*
- *the past perfect (e.g. 'had walked')*
- *the formation and uses of the general subjunctive*
- *conditional statements in various time frames ('if he stays, we will ...'), ('if he stayed, we would ...'), ('if he had stayed, we would have ...')*
- *the passive with **zu** + infinitive*
- *idiomatic particles that express the attitude of the speaker*

12.1 MORE ON THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE

As we've seen, the simple past is an alternative to the present perfect for talking about something that occurred in the past: e.g. 'I went', 'I was going' (section 10.10). It is often called the narrative past because it is used to recount a series of connected events in the past. It is more common in formal writing – the present perfect is usually used conversationally.

Apart from the above, which tense you use depends on: (a) if you want to reduce the number of words in a sentence (the simple past is a single-word tense); (b) if you want the main verb rather than an auxiliary verb in the second position; (c) if you want to create variety in complex sentences with more than one clause; (d) the rhythm of a sentence; and (e) regional speech habits.

Unlike in English, the choice is not determined by whether the action is fully completed (English past tense) or is continuing into the present (English present perfect). In German these tenses can be mixed in a sentence, with different tenses in different clauses:

simple past
Als ich ankam,

When I arrived

present perfect
**hat sie mich zu einer Tasse
Kaffee eingeladen.**

she invited me for a cup of coffee.

12

There are two conjugation patterns: (a) one adds endings to the existing verb stem, (b) the other has a stem vowel change, plus adds endings in all persons except for the first- and third-person singular:

	same-stem verbs*	new-stem verbs**
ich	-(e)te	-
du	-(e)test	-(e)st
er/sie/es	-(e)te	-
wir	-(e)ten	-en
ihr	-(e)tet	-t
sie/Sie	-(e)ten	-en

* **e** is inserted when the stem ends in **-d** or **-t**

** **e** is inserted when the stem ends in **-s**, **-ss**, or **-ß**

Was du lasest, kam von der Kirche.

What you were reading came from the church.

Die Kinder machten ziemlich viel Krach, während er redete.

The children were making quite a lot of noise while he was speaking.

Once you've learned the conjugation endings, forming the simple past of same-stem verbs is straightforward, but the vowel change in new-stem verbs has to be learned (see section 12.2).

As well as (a) and (b) above, there are (c) a few new-stem verbs that take the same-stem verb endings:

infinitive		past tense stem
brennen	to burn	brann-
bringen	to bring, to take	brach-
denken	to think	dach-
kennen	to know (someone)	kann-
wissen	to know (a fact)	wuss-

Dass du ihn kanntest, wusste ich nicht.

I didn't know that you used to know him.

12.2 STEM-CHANGING VERBS IN THE PAST

Like all irregular verb forms, the stem change for new-stem verbs just has to be learned – there is no general rule for the way they change. Note that some of the new stems are the same as the stem of the past participle (see section 9.7), while others have unique changes.

Here are some commonly used verbs grouped according to whether or not the stem is the same as the past participle. (In these verbs, the simple past stem is used for the first- and third-person singular with no endings.)

(1) Simple past stem = past participle stem

infinitive		past tense stem (1st- & 3rd-person sing.)
stehen	to stand	stand-
leiden	to suffer	litt-
pfeifen	to whistle	pfiff-
schneiden	to cut	schnitt-
streiten	to quarrel	stritt-
bleiben	to stay, to remain	blieb-
leihen	to lend	lieh-
scheinen	to seem, to shine	schien-
schreiben	to write	schrieb-
steigen	to climb	stieg-
treiben	to drive, to impel	trieb-
riechen	to smell	roch-
schließen	to shut, to close	schloss-
bieten	to offer	bot-
fliegen	to fly	flog-
fliehen	to flee	floh-
ziehen	to pull, to draw	zog-
lügen	to lie (fib)	log-

(2) Simple past stem ≠ past participle stem: the latter is given for comparison. Note that if the main vowel in the

stem of the infinitive is **-e-** or **-i-** (but not both), the past tense stem is almost certain to contain the vowel **-a-**. While this is not true of **wissen** (**wuss-**) or **gehen** (**ging-**), it works for all the other verbs in group (c) of section 12.1, for **stehen** in section (1), and for the following verbs:

infinitive		past tense stem past participle (1st- & 3rd- person sing.)	
essen	to eat	aß-	gegessen
fahren	to go (not on foot)	fuhr-	gefahren
fangen	to catch	fang-	gefangen
geben	to give	gab-	gegeben
halten	to hold	hielt-	gehalten
kommen	to come	kam-	gekommen
laufen	to run, walk	lief-	gelaufen
lesen	to read	las-	gelesen
messen	to measure	maß-	gemessen
rufen	to call (out)	rief-	gerufen
schlafen	to sleep	schlief-	geschlafen
schlagen	to hit, beat	schlug-	geschlagen
sehen	to see	sah-	gesehen
stoßen	to bump, push	stieß-	gestoßen
tragen	to carry, wear	trug-	getragen
treten	to step, kick	trat-	getreten
wachsen	to grow	wuchs-	gewachsen
 gehen	 to go	 ging-	 gegangen
 brechen	 to break	 brach-	 gebrochen
helfen	to help	half-	geholfen
sprechen	to speak	sprach-	gesprochen
sterben	to die	starb-	gestorben
treffen	to meet	traf-	getroffen
nehmen	to take	nahm-	genommen
 stehlen	 to steal	 stahl-	 gestohlen
 sitzen	 to sit	 saß-	 gesessen

schwimmen	to swim	schwamm-	geschwommen
finden	to find	fand-	gefunden
singen	to sing	sang-	gesungen
sinken	to sink	sank-	gesunken
springen	to jump	sprang-	gesprungen
trinken	to drink	trank-	getrunken
bitten	to ask, request	bat-	gebeten
liegen	to lie (recline)	lag-	gelegen

Exercise 1

Rewrite the following pairs of sentences, turning the first in each pair into a clause introduced by **während** ('while') and using the second as the main clause. Use the simple past tense in the subordinate clause and the present perfect in the main clause. The first pair has been done for you.

- 1 Ich laufe durch die Stadt.
Meine Schwester schläft.
Während ich durch die Stadt lief, hat meine Schwester geschlafen.
- 2 Alex arbeitet im Garten.
Sein Bruder hört sich Musik an.
- 3 Hanna schreibt einen Brief.
Ihre Freundin geht schwimmen.
- 4 Markus trinkt Milch.
Sein Bruder Anton trinkt Wasser.
- 5 Frau Krause spricht mit ihrem Nachbarn.
Ein Einbrecher stiehlt ihr Geld vom Küchentisch.
- 6 Die Eltern streiten sich oben im Haus.
Die Kinder halten unten im Haus eine Party.
- 7 Emil spricht mit den Eltern.
Lea fängt den Hund ein.

12.3 THE PAST PERFECT (E.G. 'I HAD BEEN')

This is formed with the simple past tense of **haben** or **sein** + past participle. (For whether to use **sein** or **haben** as the auxiliary, see section 9.5.) The past perfect is used in the same way as in English (e.g. 'I had walked/had been walking') to make the sequence of events clear:

Als ich ankam, hatten sie (schon) gegessen.

When I arrived they had (already) eaten.

When I arrived they had (already) been eating.

as opposed to

Sobald ich ankam, aßen sie.

When (i.e. After) I arrived they ate.

or

Als ich ankam, aßen sie (schon/gerade).

When I arrived they were (already/just) eating.

It is also used to refer to situations or events preceding a point or period of time that is already in the past:

Bis vorgestern hatten wir keine Briefe von ihm bekommen.

Up to the day before yesterday, we hadn't received any letters from him.

12.4 THE GENERAL SUBJUNCTIVE

The subjunctive mood is a verb form used to express something unreal, possible or hypothetical. While it exists in English, its use isn't frequent. However, it is important to learn in German.

There are two subjunctive moods in German. The most frequently used is the general subjunctive (known in German as subjunctive II). It is used in conditional sentences, to express wishes or to make polite requests.

We'll start by looking at the subjunctive conjugations of **haben** and the modal verbs, as these are forms that are in constant use.

The good news is that the general subjunctive forms are very similar – in some cases identical – to the simple past forms. Below you can see that the only difference is the addition of an umlaut for stems in **a**, **o** or **u** (except for **sollen**). The endings **-e**, **-est**, **-e**, **-en**, **-et**, **-en** are added to the stem. The 1st/3rd-person singular is given below.

	general	
past tense	subjunctive	
hatte	hätte	would have, might have
war	wäre	would be, were (as in 'if I were you ...')
wurde	würde	would
durfte	dürfte	might; (negative) shouldn't
konnte	könnte	could, might, would be able to
mochte	möchte	would like (to)
musste	müsste	would have to
sollte	sollte	should, ought to, would be supposed to

Hättest du etwas dagegen?

Would you have any objection?

An deiner Stelle wäre ich böse.

In your place I would be angry.

Würden Sie bitte warten?

Would you please wait?

Er dürfte eigentlich nicht Auto fahren.

He shouldn't really be driving.

Er könnte sich verletzen.

He might hurt himself.

Ich möchte bitte eine Tasse Kaffee.

I'd like a cup of coffee, please.

Dieser Brief müsste übermorgen schon ankommen.

This letter needs to arrive the day after tomorrow.

Du solltest nicht so schnell fahren.

You shouldn't drive so fast.

12.5 MORE ON THE GENERAL SUBJUNCTIVE

As the forms of the general subjunctive are identical to the simple past tense for same-stem verbs (see section 12.1), to avoid confusion, a different construction with the subjunctive of **werden** (**würde, würdest, würde, würden, würdet, würden**, meaning 'would') + infinitive is frequently used.

So although you might hear the following:

Wenn er ein neues Haus baute, ...

In everyday speech, the below is far more common:

Wenn er ein neues Haus bauen würde

If he built a new house, ...

The exceptions are **sein, haben** and the modal verbs we saw in the previous section, so that's why the subjunctive forms of those verbs are important to learn.

In new-stem verbs, the subjunctive is distinguishable from the simple past in at least the first- and third-person singular, as these verbs use the stem of the simple past and add the endings **-e, -est, -e, -en, -et, -en**. And if the main vowel in the new stem is **a, o** or **u**, all persons differ, as an umlaut is added in the subjunctive: **ä, ö, or ü**.

Here are the general subjunctive conjugations of some common new-stem verbs.

infinitive		bleiben	kommen	ziehen	wissen
		(to stay)	(to come)	(to pull)	(to know)
past tense					
new stem		blieb-	kam-	zog-	wusste-
general subjunctive					
ich	(-)e	bliebe	käme	zöge	wüsste
du	(-)est	bliebest	kämeest	zögest	wüsstest
er/sie/es	(-)e	bliebe	käme	zöge	wüsste
wir	(-)en	blieben	kämen	zögen	wüssten
ihr	(-)et	bliebet	kämet	zöget	wüsstet
sie/Sie	(-)en	blieben	kämen	zögen	wüssten

12.6 CONDITIONAL STATEMENTS ('IF... THEN...')

As mentioned, one of the main uses of the general subjunctive is in conditional statements. A conditional statement consists of a subordinate clause expressing the condition and usually beginning with **wenn** (if), or less commonly **falls** (in case), and a main clause that expresses what will happen if the condition is met.

The verb form used in these statements depends on how likely it is the condition will be met. For instance, in the examples below, the present tense is used as this is quite plausible. The order of the clauses can be reversed:

Wenn sie zu Hause bleibt, bringen wir ihr etwas Schönes mit.

If she stays at home we'll bring her something nice.

Wir bringen ihr etwas Schönes mit, wenn sie zu Hause bleibt.

We'll bring her something nice if she stays at home.

If the clause with the condition comes first:

(a) An alternative to using a linking word and placing the verb last (see section 11.4) is to start the clause with the verb, followed immediately by the subject:

Bleibt sie zu Hause, bringen wir ihr etwas Schönes mit.

It is important not to mistake this structure for a question.

(b) The main clause can start with **so** or **dann**:

Wenn sie zu Hause bleibt, so bringen wir ihr etwas Schönes mit.

Bleibt sie zu Hause, so bringen wir ihr etwas Schönes mit.

Wenn sie zu Hause bleibt, dann bringen wir ihr etwas Schönes mit.

Bleibt sie zu Hause, dann bringen wir ihr etwas Schönes mit.

There are three kinds of conditional statements in German, corresponding roughly to those in English.

(1) Odds are even on the condition being met, so neutral

In this context, the verb in the clause expressing the condition is conjugated in the present tense, and the verb in the main clause can be conjugated in the present or the future tense.

Wenn die Bäume schnell wachsen, bekommen wir in zwei Jahren die ersten Früchte.

If the trees grow fast, we'll get ('we get') the first fruit in two years. (present/present)

Wenn man ihm die Wahl eines Instruments überlässt, wird er bestimmt Klavier lernen.

If the choice of an instrument is left to him, he'll definitely learn the piano. (present/future)

(2) Odds are against the condition being met, so remote

Here the verbs of both clauses can be:

- either conjugated in the general subjunctive (section 12.5).
- or conjugated using the general subjunctive of **werden** (**ich/er/sie/es würde, du würdest, wir/sie/Sie würden, ihr würdet**) + infinitive.

Either option is fine. The main thing to remember is that unlike conditional sentences in English, the subjunctive must be used in both parts of the sentence.

Wenn wir so einen Mann in den Club aufnehmen würden, würden wir in Schwierigkeiten kommen.
or

Wenn wir so einen Mann in den Club aufnähmen, kämen wir in Schwierigkeiten.

If we accepted ('would accept') a man like that into the club, we would have difficulties. (subjunctive/subjunctive)

There is no need for consistency between the clauses – in fact variation is often preferred. However, as we've mentioned, **würde** + infinitive is very common in everyday speech. It has two advantages:

- many verbs (i.e. same-stem verbs) are identical in the simple past and subjunctive.
- if you're not sure of the subjunctive conjugation of a new-stem verb, you can get around this by using the **würde** construction. Of course, that makes it essential to learn the subjunctive forms of **werden**.

(3) The condition cannot be met because it relates to a possibility in the past, so hypothetical

For statements that describe a hypothetical action in the past, the past tense of the general subjunctive is required.

This is a perfect tense, so uses either **haben** or **sein** (depending on the verb) conjugated in the subjunctive as the auxiliary + past participle. (These forms for **haben** are **ich/er/sie/es hätte, du hättest, wir/sie/Sie hätten, ihr hättet**, and for **sein** are **ich/er/sie/es wäre, du wärest, wir/sie/Sie wären, ihr wäret**.) Both **hätte** and **wäre** convey the meaning 'would have'.

Again, the past subjunctive must be used in both parts of the sentence, in contrast to English tense sequence.

Wenn wir das gewusst hätten, wären wir nicht gekommen.

If we had known ('would have known') that, we wouldn't have come. (past subjunctive/past subjunctive)

Exercise 2



(a) Write out each conditional clause from the left-hand column, adding the correct main clause from the right-hand column.

(b) Write out the complete sentences a second time, deleting **wenn** and starting with the conjugated verb. The first sentence has been done for you.

1 (a) Wenn Emil in den Film geht, dann sehe ich ihn mir auch an.

1 (b) Geht Emil in den Film, dann sehe ich ihn mir auch an.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 Wenn Emil in den Film geht, ... | ... dann wird es zu kalt für uns alle. |
| 2 Wenn du die Fahrkarte besorgen würdest, ... | ... dann wäre sie schwierig. |
| 3 Wenn Peter nicht das Fenster schließt, ... | ... dann wird es Krach geben. |
| 4 Wenn dieser Mann nicht den Club verlässt, ... | ... dann sehe ich ihn mir auch an. |
| 5 Wenn die kleine Tochter nicht fernsehen dürfte, ... | ... dann wirst du am Sonntagmorgen schlafen können |
| 6 Wenn der Vater in die Kneipe (= pub) geht, ... | ... dann hätten wir die Möglichkeit, am Wochenende in die Berge zu fahren. |
| 7 Wenn du jetzt das Essen für Sonntag kochst, ... | ... dann sitzt er immer draußen. |

12.7 THE PASSIVE WITH **ZU** + INFINITIVE

We've seen how in a clause with **zu** + infinitive, this has to be in the final position (see section 10.5). In the **zu** clause, the implied subject of the verb is either the subject or the direct object in the main clause:

Wir haben vor, morgen in die Berge zu fahren.

We intend to drive into the mountains tomorrow.
(we intend ... we drive)

Ich möchte dich bitten, mir die Fahrkarte zu besorgen.

I'd like to ask you to get the ticket for me.
(ask you ... you get)

Wir helfen ihnen, den Weg zu finden.

We'll help them to find the way.
(help them ... they find)

However, **zu** + infinitive can also be used with **sein** to form the passive voice, in which case it is not a separate clause. It still appears at the end of the sentence:

Die Ergebnisse sind sofort nach der Wahl bekannt zu machen.

The results are to be made known immediately after the election.
(conveys a sense of obligation)

Dieser Wein ist in jedem Supermarkt zu bekommen.

This wine is available ('to obtain') at any supermarket.
(conveys a sense of possibility)

Dem Patienten ist nicht mehr zu helfen.

The patient cannot be helped ('is not more to be helped').
(conveys a sense of impossibility)

Sogar über den Direktor ist Kritik zu hören.

Criticism can even be heard about the director.
(conveys a sense of permission)

Note that the corresponding English construction of 'to be' + 'to' + infinitive does not necessarily form the passive, but can express the future, or an obligation, or both. For example:

The meeting is to reconvene at 7:30.
(the meeting is going to/must reconvene)

12.8 IDIOMATIC PARTICLES THAT EXPRESS MOOD

In German there are a number of short words, usually unstressed, which have no direct translation in English, and which are not strictly necessary to the 'factual' meaning of a sentence. They are known as modal particles or fillers, and they are used to reflect or reinforce mood or attitude.

Their role is not unlike the English idiomatic usage of words such as '(un)fortunately', 'sadly', and 'clearly', which are included to show how the speaker feels about what they are saying (and, often, how they hope to make the listener feel about it).

Our friends clearly can't finance the undertaking.

Here, 'clearly' indicates that the speaker feels this is an obvious fact. This is different from the use of the same word below:

She stated her intentions clearly.

Here, 'clearly' is a factual description of the verb.

The same is true of the two different uses of 'hopefully' in the following:

Hopefully, he'll pass his driving test this time.
He embarked hopefully on his third attempt at a balloon crossing of the English Channel.

These expressions include words such as ‘probably’ and ‘possibly’, by which speakers give their assessment of how likely a statement is to be realized. Such expressions serve as a speaker’s own comments on the content of what they are saying. German has similar expressions, such as **wahrscheinlich** (probably), **offensichtlich** (clearly), and **hoffentlich** (hopefully).

In addition, German also has a variety of little words that convey the attitude of the speaker. They have few counterparts in English, except ‘even.’

Here are the most common of these modal particles, in order of frequency of use. As they are idiomatic, it’s impossible to illustrate their use out of context, so we’ve just provided a rough description of the attitude each one expresses. Most of them are used in the conversation on page 196 (where we’ve underlined them).

doch	contradiction; objection; protest; persuasion
ja	acknowledgement by the speaker that the ‘fact’ being stated is well known, accepted, obvious
wohl	belief that the ‘fact’ being stated, though not definite, is highly probable; assumption
mal	minimalization of the ‘fact’ stated (like ‘just’ in English)
denn	impatience/urgency for an answer/explanation
etwa	vagueness; uncertainty; disbelief; incredulity
auch	mark or expectation of surprise at the inclusion of something in some notional category (like ‘even’ in English)
schon	mark or expectation of surprise at the relative prematurity of something on some notional scale (like ‘even’ in English)

noch	mark or expectation of surprise at the relative 'overdueness' of something on some notional scale (like 'even' in English)
eben (N. German)	acceptance, acquiescence,
halt (S. German)	resignation in the face of the inevitability of the 'fact' being stated

These definitions are not literal and are only given as a guide.

Note, too, that all these words also have literal meanings: for example, **(je)doch** (however); **ja** (yes); **wohl** (well); **(ein)mal** (once); **denn** (for); **etwa** (about); **auch** (also); **schon** (already); **noch** (still); **eben** (just now).

VOCABULARY

die	Kneipe (-n)	pub
der	Film (-e)	film
der	Fotoapparat (-e)	camera
	nämlich	you see, in fact, as
	voll	full
die	Sommerferien (plural)	summer holidays
das	Bild (-er)	photo, picture
	vorig	last
das	Taschengeld	pocket money
	sparen	to save
der	Schulausflug (-e)	school outing
	Na gut.	All right then.
	verschieden	various
das	Dia (-s)	slide
	richtig	proper
der	Augenblick (-e)	moment
	im Augenblick	at present
	überreden (I)	to persuade
	hinterher	afterwards
der	Abzug (-e)	print
der	Klassenkamerad	classmate
	(-en noun) / die	
	Klassenkameradin (-nen)	
die	Aufnahme (-n)	exposure, photo
	Vierundzwanziger	with twenty-four
	reintun (II)	to put in
	so was	that sort of thing
	überhaupt	at all, in general
der	Zähler (-)	counter
	sich bewegen (I)	to move
	weiterdrehen (II)	to wind on
der	Auslöser (-)	shutter release
	drücken	to press
	egal ob	regardless of whether
	abgesehen davon	quite apart from that
	mach dir nichts daraus	don't worry about it
	kriegen	to get, to catch

CONVERSATION

What happens when a digital native tries out analog photography with her dad's film camera

- TOCHTER Vati, sag mal, könntest du mir wohl bitte einen Film für deinen Fotoapparat geben? Die letzte Filmrolle ist nämlich voll. Ich habe ihn schon seit den Sommerferien darin und habe die letzten Bilder vorige Woche auf der Hochzeit von Marianne gemacht.
- VATER Ich verstehe, du möchtest wohl dein Taschengeld sparen! Wenn ich dir einen Film gebe, brauchst du natürlich keinen zu kaufen.
- TOCHTER Nein, so ist das nicht. Heutzutage ist so etwas schwer zu finden und wir haben heute einen Schulausflug, und ich möchte gern fotografieren können.
- VATER Na gut. Ich habe verschiedene Filme. Was für einen wolltest du haben – für Dias oder richtige Bilder?
- TOCHTER Im Augenblick ist da ein Diafilm drin. Du weißt, du hattest mich überredet, Dias zu machen. Aber ich habe richtige Bilder lieber, und die sind auch für einen Schulausflug besser. Ich könnte dann hinterher auch Abzüge für meine Klassenkameraden machen lassen.
- VATER Gut. Wie viele Aufnahmen möchtest du denn haben? Möchtest du einen Vierundzwanziger-Film haben oder einen Sechsunddreißiger?
- TOCHTER Gib mir doch einen Vierundzwanziger, dann ist der Film schneller zu Ende, denn für einen Schulausflug brauche ich doch bloß zehn oder so.
- VATER [Er reicht ihr einen Film.] So, da hast du deinen Film ...

- TOCHTER ... und Vati, könntest du mal bitte den alten Film herausnehmen und den neuen reintun? Du weißt ja, ich kenne diesen Fotoapparat noch nicht so gut ...
- VATER Na gut ... [Er öffnet den Fotoapparat.] Aber hier ist doch überhaupt kein alter Film drin! Hast du etwa die ganze Zeit ohne Film fotografiert?!
- TOCHTER Was??! Meine schönen Aufnahmen von der Hochzeit und überhaupt aus den ganzen Wochen seit den Sommerferien! Und ich dachte die ganze Zeit, es wäre ein Film drin! Der Zähler bewegte sich doch immer weiter.
- VATER Bei diesem Apparat geht der Zähler eben weiter, wenn man weiterdreht und den Auslöser drückt, egal ob ein Film drin ist oder nicht. Abgesehen davon wüsste ich nicht, wie ein Film überhaupt in diesem Apparat hätte sein können. Ich habe nämlich den alten Film am Ende der Ferien selbst herausgenommen. Aber mach dir nichts daraus! Du kriegst Abzüge von meinen Hochzeitsbildern!

TRANSLATION

- DAUGHTER Dad, (tell me,) could you give me a film for your camera, please? (You see,) the last roll is finished (lit. 'full'). I've had it in since the summer holidays, and I took the last photos last week at Marianne's wedding.
- FATHER I see, you'd like to save your pocket money! If I give you a film, you won't need to buy one, of course.
- DAUGHTER No, it's not (like) that. These days it's hard to find, and we have a school outing today, and I'd like to be able to take some photographs.

- FATHER All right. I have various films. What sort did you want (to have): for slides or proper photos?
- DAUGHTER At the moment it has a slide film. (You) remember, you'd persuaded me to take slides. But I prefer proper photos, and they're better for a school outing. Then I'd be able to get prints made for my classmates afterward.
- FATHER Fine. How many exposures would you like (to have)? Do you want a twenty-four exposure film or one with thirty-six?
- DAUGHTER Let me have one with twenty-four. (Then) the film will be finished more quickly, (since) I only need about ten for a school outing.
- FATHER [He hands her a film.] Well, there's your film ...
- DAUGHTER ... and Dad, could you please just take the old film out and put the new one in? You know I don't know this camera very well yet ...
- FATHER Oh, all right ... [He opens the camera.] But there isn't any old film (at all) in here! Surely you haven't been taking photographs all this time without film in it?!
- DAUGHTER What??!! My lovely photos of the wedding, and from all these weeks since (the start of) the summer holidays! And all the time I thought there was a film in it! But the counter kept moving on.
- FATHER In this camera the counter does move on when you wind on and press the shutter release, regardless of whether there's a film in it or not. But, apart from that, I can't see how a film could have been in the camera. (You see,) I took the old film out myself at the end of the holidays. But don't worry about it! You'll get prints of my photographs of the wedding!

Week 13

- *the present participle (the -ing form) and different ways this is expressed in German*
- *linking words such as 'therefore', 'however', etc.*
- *addressing a group informally (ihr: 'you' plural)*
- *word order in sentences with two infinitives*
- *idiomatic use of impersonal expressions*
- *uses and formation of the special subjunctive*
- *the subjunctive in reported speech*
- *participle clauses*

13.1 THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE (THE -ING FORM) AND ALTERNATIVES TO USING IT

The present participle (the -ing form in English) is normally formed by adding **-d** to the infinitive:

reisen to travel **reisend** travelling

In German, the most common use of the present participle is as an adjective in front of the noun (see section 11.2):

der lachende Polizist
the laughing policeman

We'll find out more about this usage in section 13.9.

Apart from this, there are few direct German equivalents for the various uses of the present participle in English. In examples such as the following, German would use an alternative verb form:

After talking to him I changed my mind.

After I talked to him I changed my mind.

Nachdem ich mit ihm gesprochen hatte, habe ich meine Meinung geändert.

Before leaving I gave them my phone number.

Before I left I gave them my phone number.

Bevor ich wegging, habe ich ihnen meine Telefonnummer gegeben.

However, for expressions such as 'by ...-ing' and 'in spite of ...-ing', there are no corresponding equivalents in German, which requires constructions such as those in section 11.4 (3b).

(1) Expressing 'by ...-ing'

Use **indem** to introduce a subordinate clause:

Ich konnte viel Geld sparen, indem ich Überstunden gemacht habe.

I was able to save a lot of money by doing overtime ('in that I did overtime').

(2) Expressing 'in spite of ...-ing'

Use **trotzdem** to introduce a subordinate clause:

Ich konnte nicht viel Geld sparen, trotzdem ich Überstunden gemacht habe.

I wasn't able to save much money in spite of doing overtime ('in spite of that I did overtime').

These constructions allow the main and subordinate clause to have different subjects:

Wir konnten viel Geld sparen, indem du Überstunden gemacht hast.

We were able to save a lot of money by your doing overtime.

13.2 MORE LINKING WORDS

The last conversation contained two examples of **nämlich** (namely, actually, in fact, that is to say):

Meiner ist nämlich voll.

Ich habe nämlich den alten Film . . . selbst herausgenommen.

The term **nämlich** indicates that the sentence containing it is an explanation of something previously stated.

Whereas the conjunctions we saw in section 11.4 enable clauses or sentences to be joined together, there are a number of linking words that can be used more flexibly, for example, within a phrase, and point to the way a train of thought is developing.

Some of the most common of these terms follow, grouped by function and with the nearest English equivalents. They are given without examples, because they can only be properly illustrated in the context of longer sequences. You will find many examples in the conversation at the end of this week.

Most of these terms can stand at the start or in the middle of a sentence, but any restrictions on their position are noted.

(1) Consequential

also		so
darum		thus
deshalb		therefore
daher		consequently
deswegen		
somit		
infolgedessen		

NOTE: German **also** never means 'also', and **so** on its own usually means 'in this way' (although before an adjective it means 'so').

(2) Explanatory

denn (start only)	for, because, in that case
nämlich (middle only)	in fact, actually, you see

(3) Additive

außerdem	besides, furthermore,
überdies	moreover
zudem	

ebenfalls	likewise
gleichfalls	

(4) Dismissive

ohnehin (middle only)	anyway, in any case
sowieso (middle only)	

(5) Remonstrative

immerhin	after all
schließlich	

wenigstens	at least
jedenfalls	at any rate

(6) Reservational

jedoch	however
doch (start only)	

(7) Contrastive

andererseits
dagegen
hingegen

on the other hand,
in contrast, by
comparison

(8) Concessive

allerdings
freilich

admittedly, to be sure,
though (final only),
mind you

zwar ... aber

true ... but

NOTE: **zwar** in this sense is always followed by **aber**, **jedoch**, or some similar reservational term in a subsequent sentence.

(9) Provocative

trotzdem
dennoch

nevertheless,
nonetheless

(10) Alternative

sonst
ansonsten

otherwise

es sei denn

unless, except that

NOTE: **es sei denn** is very close in sense to the linking word **wenn** (if) followed by a negative (**nicht** or **kein**).

Exercise 1



Add an appropriate linking word from the list below to the second sentence of each pair. In some sentences more than one choice is possible, in which case the key gives the most apt word, with the others in brackets. Try putting the terms at the start and in the middle of the sentence, making any other necessary changes. The first example has been done for you.

allerdings
andererseits
außerdem
deshalb
immerhin
jedoch
trotzdem

- 1 Emil weiß, dass Karl kommt.
Er plant eine Busfahrt mit ihm.
Deshalb plant er eine Busfahrt mit ihm.
Er plant deshalb eine Busfahrt mit ihm.
- 2 Karl möchte zur Nordsee.
Emil bucht eine Fahrt nach Berlin.
- 3 Berlin ist eine schöne Stadt.
Es gibt sehr viele Touristen.
- 4 Die Nordsee ist ruhig.
In Berlin gibt es viel zu sehen.
- 5 Das Brandenburger Tor ist sehr attraktiv.
Es ist historisch und politisch wichtig.
- 6 Warum ist es historisch und politisch wichtig?
Vor einiger Zeit war es das Tor zwischen Westen und Osten.
- 7 Karl wollte an die Nordsee.
Er hat Berlin sehr interessant gefunden.

13.3 ADDRESSING A GROUP INFORMALLY: THE PLURAL 'YOU' (IHR)



We've seen how **du** is used to address one person informally (section 7.5), and **Sie** is used to address anyone (one or more than one person) formally.

Don't forget that there is also a third form, **ihr**, which is used for talking to more than one person you know well or are on casual terms with. This can be tricky for English speakers to get used to, so here is a reminder of the forms for the informal plural 'you':

personal pronoun	possessive adjective
SU ihr you	SU euer / eure your
DO euch you	(m./n.) / (f./pl.)
IO euch you	(see section 7.2 for the other declensions)

ihr conjugations

	present tense	simple past	general subjunctive	imperative (commands)
haben	habt	hattet	hättet	habt
sein	seid	wart	wäret	seid
dürfen	dürft	durftet	dürftet	–
sollen	sollt	solltet	solltet	–
lassen	lasst	ließt	ließt	lasst
sehen	seht	saht	sähet	seht
machen	macht	machtet	machtet	macht
reden	redet	redetet	redetet	redet

13.4 SUBORDINATE CLAUSES WITH TWO INFINITIVES

A subordinate clause in which the conjugated verb comes last (see section 11.4) will contain two infinitives if a perfect tense of certain auxiliary verbs is used. Look at two examples from section 10.9:

**Ich habe den Nachbarn helfen müssen.
Ich habe meinen Wagen waschen lassen.**

If we turn them into subordinate clauses, in which the conjugated verb (here, **habe**) would normally stand last, it now comes immediately before the two infinitives:

Ich kam zu spät, weil ich den Nachbarn habe helfen müssen.

I came late because I had to help the neighbours.

Obwohl ich meinen Wagen habe waschen lassen, sah er hinterher immer noch schmutzig aus.

Although I had my car washed, it still looked dirty afterwards.

13.5 IMPERSONAL EXPRESSIONS

Some German expressions use the third-person singular pronoun **es** as a 'general' subject that doesn't specify a particular person or thing.

Certain of these are similar to English (e.g. **es regnet** it's raining), but some are more idiomatic. You already know **es gibt** (there is/are, section 6.2) and **es handelt sich (um)** (it concerns, section 11.6). Here are some more examples:

Bei Nacht ging es über die Grenze.

I [or whoever the context indicates] crossed the frontier by night.

Während der Revolution kam es zu gefährlichen Unruhen.

During the revolution some dangerous disturbances occurred.

Bei unseren Exportplänen geht es nur um den Kurs.

As regards our export plans, it's solely a matter of the rate of exchange.

In these examples, **es** is obligatory, but it's optional in other idioms and is commonly left out in everyday speech.

Es ist mir zu warm, mach bitte das Fenster auf!

or

Mir ist zu warm, mach bitte das Fenster auf!

I'm too hot. Please open the window!

Es graut mir vor dem Schulanfang nach den Ferien.

or

Mir graut vor dem Schulanfang nach den Ferien.

I hate (the thought of) the start of school after the holidays.

13.6 THE SPECIAL SUBJUNCTIVE

This is the second form of the German subjunctive (known in German as subjunctive II), which was traditionally used to report the speech of a third person (see section 13.7). Today it is rare in everyday speech, and is almost exclusively used in the third-person singular. This is formed by adding **-e** to the stem of the infinitive. (The sole exception is **sein**, see below.) The only plural form much used is **seien** (from **sein**).

	3rd-person singular special subjunctive
infinitive	
haben	habe
sein	sei
dürfen	dürfe
sollen	solle
lassen	lasse
sehen	sehe
machen	mache
reden	rede
tun	tue

13.7 REPORTED SPEECH

As in English, directly quoted speech in German is placed within quotation marks (although the style of quotation marks is a bit different, as you'll see in the examples).

In reported speech, German as in English always uses the third person: for instance, if the speaker says 'I ...', this becomes 'he' or 'she' in reported speech, or 'here' may become 'there', etc.

However, a key difference in German is that in formal writing such as newspapers or in broadcasts on the radio or TV (although rarely in everyday conversation), the subjunctive is used throughout for reporting speech. Here are some guidelines:

(1) Every present tense verb in the speaker's actual words (including the present tenses of **haben** and **sein** used as part of the present perfect, or of **werden** as part of the future or the passive) is replaced by EITHER the special subjunctive OR the general subjunctive.

The main thing is that the verb should demonstrably be in the subjunctive. The special subjunctive should be used if its form is different from the present tense. However, with many verbs, the special subjunctive conjugation is the same as the present tense, so in that situation the general subjunctive should be used.

However, very often the third-person singular (he/she) is used in reported speech, and this is always different from the present tense because the third-person singular in the special subjunctive ends in **-e** instead of **-t**. So you would read or hear, for example:

Actual words	Der Minister: „Ich nehme die ganze Verantwortung auf mich, denn der Fehler wird schwere Folgen haben.“
--------------	---

Reported speech	Der Minister sagte, er nehme die ganze Verantwortung auf sich,
-----------------	---

denn der Fehler werde schwere Folgen haben.

The Minister said he was taking the whole responsibility upon himself, for the error would have grave consequences.

Actual words

Monika: „Ich nehme keinen Regenschirm mit, sonst lasse ich ihn bestimmt irgendwo liegen.“

Reported speech

Monika sagte, sie nehme/nähme keinen Regenschirm mit, sonst lasse/ließe sie ihn bestimmt irgendwo liegen.

Monika said she wasn't taking an umbrella. Otherwise she would be certain to leave it somewhere.

Actual words

Die Freunde: „Wir sind heute zu euch gekommen, weil wir euch seit langem nicht gesehen haben.“

Reported speech

Unsere Freunde sagten, sie seien/wären heute zu uns gekommen, weil sie uns seit langem nicht gesehen hätten.

Our friends said they had come to (see) us today because they hadn't seen us for a long time.

NOTE:

(a) The general subjunctive is preferred in conversation.

(b) Just as **würde (-st, -n, -t)** + infinitive of the main verb is used in conditional statements (see section 12.6), it is also a useful substitute in reported speech, especially when no clear subjunctive form is available:

Actual words

Die Nachbarn: „Wir erwarten unsere Tochter mit Mann und Kindern aus Würzburg für die Weihnachtsferien.“

Reported speech **Unsere Nachbarn sagten, sie würden ihre Tochter mit Mann und Kindern aus Würzburg für die Weihnachtsferien erwarten.**
 Our neighbours said they were expecting their daughter with her husband and children from Würzburg for the Christmas holidays.

(2) Every past tense verb in the speaker's actual words is replaced by the past subjunctive of that verb, which is formed with either the special or general subjunctive of **haben** or **sein** + past participle. The rule for the choice of the auxiliary is the same as for other perfect tenses:

Actual words **Peter: „Ich fand nur drei Kunden vor, als ich das Geschäft aufmachte.“**

Reported speech **Peter sagt, er { habe
hätte } nur drei Kunden vorgefunden, als er das Geschäft aufgemacht { habe
hätte. }**

Peter said he found only three customers (waiting) when he opened the shop.

Actual words **Die Zwillinge: „Wir gingen zusammen bis zum Markt, wo wir uns dann trennten.“**

Reported speech **Die Zwillinge sagten, sie { seien
wären } zusammen bis zum Markt gegangen, wo sie sich dann getrennt hätten.“**

The twins said they went together as far as the market, where they then separated.

If the speaker's actual words are in the past perfect (see section 12.3), the **haben** or **sein** auxiliary is simply replaced with the subjunctive equivalent:

Actual words **Die Gäste: „Wir waren zum Strand gegangen und als wir uns zum Sonnen**

	hingelegt hatten, fing es plötzlich an zu regnen.“
Reported speech	Die Gäste sagten, sie wären zum Strand gegangen, und als sie sich zum Sonnen hingelegt hätten, [^{hätte}_{habe}] es plötzlich angefangen zu regnen. The guests said they had gone to the beach and when they had lain down to sunbathe it suddenly started raining.

(3) When a speaker's actual words contain an imperative form of the verb (the command form), there is no hard and fast rule about how to report this indirectly. The natural way is to use either the general subjunctive **möchte** or some form of the verb **sollen**, subjunctive or not, as seems to fit the case:

Actual words	Arzt: „Essen Sie nur Fisch oder mageres Fleisch!“
Reported speech	Der Arzt sagt, ich soll nur Fisch oder mageres Fleisch essen. The doctor says I must only eat fish or lean meat.
Actual words	Schwester und Schwager: „Geh zum Arzt!“
Reported speech	Die haben gemeint, ich soll zum Arzt gehen. They said I must go to the doctor.
Actual words	Arzthelferin: „Herr Doktor, schauen Sie bitte doch noch einmal bei Herrn Sinke vorbei.“
Reported speech	Meine Helferin hat gesagt, ich sollte bei Ihnen noch einmal vorbeischauen. My assistant told me to visit you again.
Actual words	Hempels: „Bitte besuchen Sie uns doch, sobald wir das Haus eingerichtet haben!“

Reported speech	Hempels haben gesagt, wir möchten sie besuchen, sobald sie das Haus eingerichtet hätten. The Hempels said we must visit them as soon as they had furnished the house.
--------------------	--

13.8 WORD ORDER IN REPORTED SPEECH

Most of the examples in the previous section required no change in word order in reported speech. This is because no linking words were used to introduce the reported speech clauses. This is only possible with statements and instructions. Even these are often introduced by **dass**, and all reported questions must start with one of the linking words from section 11.4 (2). In these situations the conjugated verb in the clause must stand at the end:

Actual words **Mann: „Ich halte gar nichts von den Freunden unserer Kinder.“**

Reported
speech **Mein Mann sagt, dass er gar nichts von
den Freunden unserer Kinder halte/hielte.**
My husband says that he doesn't think
much of our children's friends.

Actual words Er: „Wie lange wirst du noch einkaufen?“

Reported speech **Er fragte sie, wie lange sie noch einkaufen {werde würde.**

He asked her how long she would go on shopping.

Actual words Ich: „Geben Sie meinem Sohn noch eine Chance?“

Reported speech **Ich fragte ihn, ob er meinem Sohn noch eine Chance** { **gebe** **gäbe.**

I asked him whether he would give my son another chance.

Exercise 2



For each example of reported speech, select which of the statements (a), (b), or (c) comes closest to the situation described.

- 1** Der Minister sagt, er habe den Brief vor drei Wochen zwar gesehen, aber er sei nicht überzeugt gewesen.
(a) Es gibt einen Brief.
(b) Es gibt keinen Brief.
(c) Ein Brief ist angekommen.
- 2** Monika sagt, sie habe ihren Regenschirm zuerst an der Schule liegen gelassen, ihn dann aber später abgeholt.
(a) Sie hat ihren Regenschirm verloren.
(b) Sie bringt ihren Regenschirm zur Schule.
(c) Sie hat ihren Regenschirm noch.
- 3** Die Freunde sagen, sie hätten uns lange nicht gesehen und würden uns gern besuchen.
(a) Die Freunde besuchen uns.
(b) Die Freunde möchten uns besuchen.
(c) Die Freunde möchten uns nicht sehen.
- 4** Die Nachbarn sagen, ihre Tochter spiele im Orchester Klarinette und ginge bald auf eine Reise nach England.
(a) Die Tochter geht auf Ferien nach England.
(b) Die Tochter spielt Klarinette in England.
(c) Die Nachbarn fahren nach England.
- 5** Peter sagt, er habe nur zwei Kunden am Morgen gehabt; am Nachmittag seien noch vier schwierige Kunden gekommen und er sei deshalb am Abend sehr müde gewesen.
(a) Peter hat sechs nette Kunden gehabt.
(b) Peter ist froh, dass es Abend ist.
(c) Peter bedient seine Kunden freundlich.
- 6** Die Zwillinge sagen, sie seien auf den Markt gegangen und hätten sich Pullover gekauft; einer von ihnen habe noch ein T-Shirt gekauft.
(a) Die Zwillinge haben zwei Pullover und zwei T-Shirts gekauft.
(b) Die Zwillinge haben sich auf dem Markt getrennt.
(c) Einer der Zwillinge hat einen Pullover und ein T-Shirt.

7 Die Gäste sagen, sie hätten sich erst am Strand sonnen wollen; sie hätten dann einen Ausflug machen wollen, aber die Sonne sei für alles zu heiß gewesen.

- (a) Die Gäste haben einen Ausflug gemacht.
- (b) Die Gäste haben sich gesonnt.
- (c) Die Gäste konnten das alles nicht machen.

13.9 PARTICIPLE CLAUSES

Section 11.4 (1) on relative pronouns (**der, die, das**, etc.) showed how they link the clause they introduce to a noun mentioned in a preceding clause. But sometimes a clause can be placed before the noun to which it relates rather than after it.

A clause before the noun must have that noun as its subject, and the verb in the clause becomes a participle. To illustrate this, let's take an example from section 11.4 where the relative pronoun is in the nominative case:

Das Fleisch, das auf dem Tisch liegt, kannst du für den Hund nehmen. ('The meat, that lies on the table, you can take for the dog'.)

The clause could also appear as follows:

Das [auf dem Tisch liegende] Fleisch kannst du für den Hund nehmen. ('The [on the table lying] meat you can take for the dog'.)

Three things have happened to this clause:

- (a) the relative pronoun **das** has been dropped
- (b) the conjugated verb **liegt** has changed into the present participle **liegend** (lying) (see sections 11.2 and 13.1)
- (c) **liegend** has acquired the ending needed by adjectives after definite articles (see section 7.3), since although

liegend is not an adjective it has to be treated like one in the same way as **das frische Fleisch** → **das auf dem Tisch liegende Fleisch**.

Apart from that, the word order is the same as in the original relative clause, with **liegend** occupying the position of the verb **liegt**. The participle clause would be the same if the time frame changed:

Das Fleisch, das auf dem Tisch lag, konntest du für den Hund nehmen.

Das [auf dem Tisch liegende] Fleisch konntest du für den Hund nehmen.

You were able to take the meat that was on the table for the dog.

There are restrictions on which type of word may appear last in participle clauses (note that these are almost always inserted between an article and the noun they relate to and include a participle).

There are five possible types of final word, depending on the characteristics of the original relative clause (in the following examples, the relative clause from which the participle clause is derived is given first). The final word in the clause can be:

(1) An adjective

Der Verlust der Reisepässe war eine Angelegenheit, die dem Reiseleiter äußerst unangenehm war.

The loss of the passports was a matter that was extremely embarrassing to the courier.

Der Verlust der Reisepässe war eine [dem Reiseleiter äußerst unangenehme] Angelegenheit.

Here the verb **war** from the original relative clause has disappeared in the participle clause.

(2) The present participle of almost any verb except **sein** and the auxiliary verbs (when they function as auxiliaries)

Teilnehmer, die bis morgen auf ihre Ergebnisse hier warten, werden eingeladen, im Hotel zu übernachten.

Participants who are waiting here until tomorrow for their results are invited to spend the night in the hotel.

[Bis morgen auf ihre Ergebnisse hier wartende] Teilnehmer werden eingeladen, im Hotel zu übernachten.

In this participle clause there is no definite article, as this is also omitted in the original sentence. The conjugated verb **warten** becomes a present participle.

(3) The past participle of any verb that can have a DO

Das östliche Mittelmeer, das oft von meinen Bekannten als Lieblingsreiseziel ausgesucht wird, werde auch ich mir dieses Jahr vornehmen.

This year I'm also going to visit the eastern Mediterranean, which is often chosen by those I know ('my acquaintances') as a favourite destination.

Das [oft von meinen Bekannten als Lieblingsreiseziel ausgesuchte] östliche Mittelmeer werde auch ich mir dieses Jahr vornehmen.

Zündkerzen, die zu selten ausgewechselt wurden, können einen dann im Stich lassen.

Spark plugs that have been changed too infrequently can (then) leave you in the lurch.

[Zu selten ausgewechselte] Zündkerzen können einen dann im Stich lassen.

Here, the participle clauses omit the conjugated auxiliary verb **werden**. The past participles **ausgesucht** and **ausgewechselt** take an ending like an adjective. The second example does not start with a definite article.

(4) The past participle of a verb requiring **sein** in the perfect tenses

Die Stadt wird von einer Krankheit bedroht, die in der Gegend noch nie vorgekommen ist.

The town is threatened by a disease that has never before appeared in the area.

Die Stadt wird von einer [in der Gegend noch nie vorgekommenen] Krankheit bedroht.

This type of participle clause loses the conjugated auxiliary verb **sein** from the original clause. The past participle takes an ending like an adjective.

(5) zu + present participle of any verb that can take a DO

It might be helpful to refer back to section 12.7, from which the following examples derive:

Die Ergebnisse, die sofort nach der Wahl bekannt zu machen sind, werden im Rathaus ausgehängt.

The results, which are to be made known immediately after the election, will be posted in the town hall.

Die [sofort nach der Wahl bekannt zu machenden] Ergebnisse werden im Rathaus ausgehängt.

Die Kritik, die über den Direktor zu hören war, war unberechtigt.

The criticism that was to be heard about the director was unfounded.

Die [über den Direktor zu hörende] Kritik war unberechtigt.

Here, the conjugated form of **sein** disappears in the participle clause.

With all these examples, it is essential first to isolate the participle clause, then to establish which type of relative clause it is similar to. Finally, you need to understand it along the same lines as our translations of the original clauses. Participle clauses are found in profusion in German, especially in writing, so it's important to be able to recognize and understand them.

VOCABULARY

Here are some new words used in the conversation that follows:

	vorhaben (II)	to have planned
	genau	precisely
	hier ist nichts los	nothing's going on here
	um ... herum	about
	erzählen	to tell
	zustehen (II)	to be due
	vorschießen (II)	to advance (money)
	meines Erachtens	in my opinion
	wahnsinnig	crazy
	umgehen (mit) (II)	to deal (with)
die	Verhältnisse (plural)	conditions, circumstances
	ausgeben (II)	to spend
	grillen	to grill
	geeignet	suitable
	je	each
	besorgen (I)	to obtain
	so (et)was	things like that
die	Tiefkühltruhe (-n)	freezer (chest)
	toll	great, fantastic
	sich verschulden (I)	to get into debt, to go into the red
	überübermorgen	the day after the day after tomorrow
	übernachten (I)	to stay the night
	aufkommen (II)	to (be liable to) pay
	was = etwas	something
	übrigens	by the way
der	Eintritt	admission
	dabei wegkommen (mit) (II)	to get away (with)
	nicht in Frage kommen	to be out of the question
der	Vorschuss (¨e)	advance
	gewiss	certainly

	anspruchslos	undemanding
die	Unterhaltung (-en)	entertainment
	in die Tasche greifen	to dip into one's pocket
	losfahren (II)	to set out, to come out
	abholen (II)	to collect, to pick up
die	Erziehung	education, upbringing
die	Sparsamkeit	thrift

CONVERSATION

A family controversy over teenagers' spending

- VATER **Was habt ihr denn heute Abend vor?**
- SOHN **Das wissen wir noch nicht ganz genau. Hier in Vossdorf ist heute nichts los, aber in Wunsdorf soll es eine große Party mit bekannten DJs geben. Die wäre allerdings ziemlich teuer, so um die fünfundzwanzig Euro herum pro Person, hat uns die Brigitte erzählt ...**
- MUTTER **... und deswegen wollt ihr also nicht hin ...**
- TOCHTER **... O doch, wenn ihr uns das uns für die nächsten vier Wochen zustehende Taschengeld vorschießen würdet.**
- VATER **Ihr habt eine meines Erachtens wahnsinnige Art, mit Geld umzugehen. Ihr lebt total über eure Verhältnisse. So viel braucht ihr doch wohl nicht für einen einzigen Abend auszugeben!**
- MUTTER **Ja, Vater hat ganz Recht!**
- SOHN **Es geht leider nicht nur um heute Abend! Morgen gibt's nämlich ein Barbecue bei Eckels, und der Leo hat gesagt, wir**

möchten doch etwas zum Grillen und ein paar Getränke mitbringen.

MUTTER So was braucht ihr doch nicht zu kaufen! Ich werde für euch ein paar Sachen aus der Tiefkühltruhe holen, und Getränke könnt ihr auch von hier mitnehmen.

TOCHTER Oh, das wäre toll! Ich glaube, wir müssen uns trotzdem verschulden, denn überübermorgen gibt die Brigitte eine tolle Party bei ihr, und da wir auch dort übernachten dürfen, müssen wir ihrer Mutter natürlich ein Geschenk mitbringen.

MUTTER Wenn es sich um ein Geschenk für die Mutter handelt, braucht ihr doch nicht dafür aufzukommen! Ich besorge morgen was Schönes in der Stadt.

VATER Was möchtest du denn sonst noch finanzieren, Ilse?

SOHN Übrigens brauchen wir für heute Abend nicht nur den Eintritt sondern auch das Geld für ein Taxi hinterher von Wunsdorf bis nach Hause. Das sind immerhin fünfzehn Kilometer, und mit weniger als dreißig Euro Fahrtkosten kommen wir nicht dabei weg.

VATER Das macht zusammen etwa achtzig Euro für einen einzigen Abend! Das kommt überhaupt nicht in Frage, mit oder ohne Vorschuss!

MUTTER Was Vater sagt, ist ganz gewiss richtig, ihr müsstet viel anspruchsloser sein. Andererseits, für eine harmlose Unterhaltung mit Freunden einmal in der Woche braucht ihr nicht in eure eigene Tasche zu greifen. Den Eintritt können wir bezahlen. Außerdem sagt Vater immer, er führe nachts ganz gern los, um euch von irgendwo abzuholen. Also könnt ihr auch das Taxigeld sparen!

VATER Und das soll nun Erziehung zu Sparsamkeit sein!

TRANSLATION

- FATHER So what have you got on this evening?
- SON We don't exactly know yet. There's nothing going on here in Vossdorf, but there's supposed to be a big party with famous DJs in Wunsdorf. It's pretty expensive though, about 25 euros per person, that's what Brigitte told us ...
- MOTHER ... and so you're not intending to go then ...
- DAUGHTER Oh we are, if you'd advance us the pocket money that's due to us for the next four weeks.
- FATHER You have a way of dealing with money that's crazy in my opinion. You're living completely beyond your means. You're not telling me that you need to spend that much on a single evening!
- MOTHER Yes, your father's absolutely right!
- SON Unfortunately, it's not just a question of tonight. In fact, tomorrow there's a barbecue at the Eckels, and Leo said we should bring something to barbecue and a few drinks.
- MOTHER But you don't need to buy anything like that! I'll take a few things out of the freezer for you, and you can take some drinks from here, too.
- DAUGHTER Oh, that would be great! I still think we'll have to go into the red though. The day after the day after tomorrow Brigitte's giving a fantastic party at hers, and as we're allowed to stay the night there we've obviously got to take her mother a present.
- MOTHER If it's a present for her mother, you don't have to spend your money on it! I'll get something nice in town tomorrow.
- FATHER And what else were you thinking of underwriting, Ilse?
- SON By the way, for this evening we don't only need the admission, but also the money for a taxi home from Wunsdorf afterwards. After all, that's fifteen kilometres, and we won't get away with a fare less than 30 euros.

FATHER Altogether that's about 80 euros for a single evening! That's quite out of the question, with or without an advance!

MOTHER What your father says is quite right. You ought to be a lot less demanding. On the other hand, you don't need to dip into your own pockets for a bit of harmless entertainment with friends once a week. We can pay the admission charge. Moreover, your dad's always saying how he's happy to come out at night to pick you up from somewhere or other. So you'll even be able to save the taxi fare!

FATHER And that's what you call bringing them up to be careful with money!

Reading practice



Eine Reise durch Europa

Als ich eine Einladung zu einer Hochzeit in Verona, Italien, erhielt, war ich total aufgeregt. Ich könnte den Zug nehmen und eine Tour durch Europa machen! Also machte ich mich eines Morgens im Juli mit Rucksack, Bahnfahrkarte und einem Geldbeutel voller Euro auf den Weg und begann mein Abenteuer!

Ich nahm einen Zug von London nach Amsterdam und verbrachte ein angenehmes Wochenende, an dem ich an den Kanälen entlang radelte und köstlichen holländischen Käse probierte. Dann fuhr ich weiter nach München und erkundete den riesigen Park im Zentrum, den Englischen Garten. Als nächstes reiste ich durch die Alpen nach Lyon und dann weiter an die Westküste Frankreichs. Die Reise dauerte mehrere Tage, aber die Landschaft war so spektakulär, dass es mir nichts ausmachte. Nachdem ich in Bordeaux einen Stopp eingelegt hatte, um den berühmten Wein zu genießen, überquerte ich die Grenze nach Spanien und reiste an der Nordküste entlang, um pintxos in San Sebastián zu probieren und die Kathedrale in Santiago de Compostela zu besuchen. Mit der Straßenbahn erkundete ich die reizvolle Altstadt von Lissabon, besuchte das Prado-Museum in Madrid und lernte die außergewöhnliche Architektur von Gaudí in Barcelona kennen. Von dort kehrte ich nach Frankreich zurück und verbrachte einige Tage in den eleganten Badeorten an der Côte d'Azur.

Als ich nach Italien fuhr und in Genua ankam, wusste ich, dass meine tolle Reise fast vorbei war. Aber einen Ort musste ich noch besuchen: die historische und romantische Stadt Verona. Die Hochzeit war unglaublich schön und ich genoss eine der besten Mahlzeiten meines Lebens. Es war der perfekte Abschluss einer unvergesslichen Reise.

VOCABULARY



Die Hochzeit	wedding	köstlich	delicious
auf den		erkundete	explored
Weg machen	set off	riesig	huge
Der Rucksack	backpack	Die Landschaft	scenery
Die		spektakulär	spectacular
Bahnfahrkarte	rail pass	nichts	
angenehm	enjoyable	ausmachen	didn't mind
Die Kanäle	canals	reizvolle	charming



A tour of Europe

When I received an invitation to a wedding in Verona, Italy, I was really excited. I could take the train and go on a tour of Europe! So, one morning in July, I set off with a backpack, a rail pass and a wallet full of euros, and began my adventure!

I took a train from London to Amsterdam and spent an enjoyable weekend cycling along the canals and trying delicious Dutch cheeses. Then I went to Munich and explored its huge central park, the Englischer Garten. Next, I travelled through the Alps to Lyon and then to the west coast of France. It took several days, but the scenery was so spectacular that I didn't mind. After stopping in Bordeaux to enjoy its famous wine, I crossed the border into Spain and travelled along the north coast, stopping to try pinxos in San Sebastián and visit the cathedral in Santiago de Compostela. I explored Lisbon's charming old town by tram, visited the Prado museum in Madrid, and discovered the extraordinary architecture of Gaudí in Barcelona. From there, I returned to France and spent a few days in the stylish seaside resorts of the Côte d'Azur.

When I crossed the Italian border and arrived in Genoa, I knew my amazing tour was almost over. But I had one place left to visit: the historic and romantic city of Verona. The wedding was incredible and I had one of the best meals of my life. It was the perfect end to an unforgettable trip.

VOCABULARY



kennenlernen	discovered
außergewöhnlich	extraordinary
Die Architektur	architecture
elegant	stylish
Die Badeorte	seaside resorts
unglaublich	incredible
unvergesslich	unforgettable

Key to exercises

Week 3

Exercise 1: 1 Der Vater liebt die Wirtin. 2 Es ist harmlos!
3 Er kauft die Zeitung. 4 Sie macht die Betten. 5 Die Tochter holt das Auto. 6 Sie ruft die Katze und den Hund. 7 Die Katze und der Hund kommen. 8 Die Wirtin bringt Wasser. 9 Vater, Wirtin, Tochter, Hund und Katze trinken das Wasser.

Week 4

Exercise 1: 1 Sie kaufen ein Haus und bauen Wohnungen. 2 Eine Wohnung hat keine Küche. 3 Das ist ein Problem und sie bauen eine Küche. 4 Eine Wohnung hat kein Wasser. 5 Das ist auch ein Problem, aber der Vater installiert ein Wassersystem. 6 Eine Wohnung hat keinen Strom. 7 Das ist kein Problem. Der Sohn ist Elektriker. 8 Eine Wohnung hat eine Küche, Wasser, Strom und (einige) Schränke, aber keine Fenster. 9 Das ist kein Problem, es ist eine Katastrophe.

Exercise 2: 2 Zwei Brote kosten €5 (fünf Euro). 3 Zwei Würste kosten €3 (drei Euro). 4 Zwei Uhren kosten €170,00 (hundredsiebzig Euro). 5 Zwei Zeitungen kosten €3,50 (drei Euro fünfzig). 6 Zwei Betten kosten €688 (sechshundertachtundachtzig Euro). 7 Zwei Schränke kosten €1 010 ((ein)tausendzehn Euro). 8 Zwei Messer kosten €7,20 (sieben Euro zwanzig). 9 Zwei Rosen kosten €4,30 (vier Euro dreißig). 10 Zwei Autos kosten €36 000,00 (sechsenddreißigtausend Euro).

Exercise 3: Ich bringe meinem Vater ein Buch. Ich gebe es ihm im Flur. Ich schenke meinem Bruder einen Hund und wünsche ihm einen guten Tag.

Week 5

Exercise 1: 1 Was 2 Wann 3 Wen 4 Wo 5 Wer 6 Wie
7 Warum

Exercise 2:

Verkäufer Bitte schön ...?

Fremde Guten Tag. Haben Sie einen Führer?

Verkäufer Was für einen Führer?

Fremde Einen Stadtführer.

Verkäufer Ich weiß es nicht. Fragen Sie bitte den Chef.

Fremde Guten Tag. Ich suche einen Stadtführer. Haben Sie so etwas?

Chef Ja sicher. Die Stadtführer sind drüben. Gucken Sie dort ...

Fremde Es ist verrückt. Ich finde Stadtführer von Frankfurt, Gießen, Marburg und Kassel, aber ich finde keinen Stadtführer von Bunsenheim.

Chef Natürlich nicht. Warum brauchen wir Stadtführer von Bunsenheim? Wir wohnen hier und kennen die Stadt!

Exercise 3: 2 größer 3 jünger 4 klüger 5 wärmer
6 länger 7 netter

Week 6

Exercise 1: Der Verbrecher steht mit einem Pinsel und einer Palette in der Hand vor einem Bild. Auf dem Bild sind mehrere Sachen. Auf einer Tischdecke liegt ein Brot, neben dem Brot ist ein Glas und hinter dem Brot ist eine Flasche mit einem Korken. Auf der Flasche ist ein Etikett. Was ist aber für den Verbrecher am wichtigsten? Die Feile in dem/im Brot natürlich!

Exercise 2: Der Einbrecher geht bis an die Haustür. Er klopft an die Tür. Niemand kommt zur Tür. Er geht um das Haus und guckt durch die Fenster. Er findet ein Auto ohne Nummernschild zwischen dem Haus und der Garage.

Er geht zurück an die Haustür. Er steckt eine Feile zwischen die Tür und den Rahmen. Er öffnet die Tür mit der Feile und geht in den Flur. Ihm gegenüber auf der Treppe sitzt ein Skelett mit einer Axt in der Hand!

Exercise 3:

- Hotelgast Was gibt es im Fernsehen heute Abend?
Kellner Ich weiß es nicht.
Hotelgast Gucken Sie bitte in die Fernsehzeitung.
Kellner Es gibt keine Fernsehzeitung diese Woche.
Hotelgast Gibt es eine Tageszeitung?
Kellner Ja, hier ist eine Tageszeitung ... aber sie ist leider von gestern.

Week 7

Exercise 1: 2 Nein, sie ist mit ihrer Schwester bei Müllers eingeladen. 3 Nein, der Vater kommt ohne unser Geschenk für die Mutter. 4 Nein, ich esse den Kuchen mit einer Tasse Kaffee. 5 Nein, er geht mit seinem Stadtführer durch Frankfurt. 6 Nein, ich mache das Abendbrot ohne meine Tochter. 7 Nein, sie geht ohne ihren Bruder zur Tante. 8 Nein, wir kaufen die Wurst ohne eine Cola.

Exercise 2: 1 Keiner, (Jeder) 2 Welche 3 Keinen, Diesen 4 Keinen, Diesen 5 (Jeder), Dieser 6 Solches, Welches 7 Welches 8 Jeder, Dieser 9 Welche, Jede

Translation of conversation:

- Her Could you go and do the shopping now?
Him Certainly! Do you have a shopping list for me?
Her No, I'll tell you everything ... First please pick up a small white loaf and ten fresh rolls from the baker's.
Him They're cheaper at the supermarket, and we're going there this afternoon.
Her All right. Then buy half a pound of mince and 350 grams of boiled ham at the butcher's.

- Him They always serve me badly at the butcher's.
I would rather buy meat in the old town, and we also have to go there this afternoon.
- Her Okay. Then from the greengrocer's I need lettuce, one and a half pounds of small, firm tomatoes, a nice cucumber, ten pounds of potatoes and a pound of French beans.
- Him The things for the salad and the other vegetables aren't urgent, and after all there's (a) market tomorrow.
- Her Fine, but I definitely need eggs.
- Him No, you don't need (them). We still have a lot.
We'll get eggs from the market too.
- Her All right, then you don't need to go shopping.

Exercise 4: 2 Hol bitte ein kleines Weißbrot vom Bäcker. Das Weißbrot kaufe ich lieber im Supermarkt. 3 Hol bitte 250 Gramm gekochten Schinken vom Metzger. Den gekochten Schinken kaufe ich lieber in der Altstadt. 4 Hol bitte einen Kopfsalat vom Gemüsegeschäft. Den Kopfsalat kaufe ich lieber auf dem Markt. 5 Hol bitte zwanzig Eier. Die Eier kaufe ich lieber auf dem Markt. 6 Hol bitte eine schöne Gurke vom Gemüsegeschäft. Die Gurke kaufe ich lieber auf dem Markt. 7 Hol bitte zehn frische Brötchen vom Bäcker. Die Brötchen kaufe ich lieber im Supermarkt. 8 Hol bitte ein halbes Pfund Hackfleisch vom Metzger. Das Hackfleisch kaufe ich lieber in der Altstadt. 9 Hol bitte zehn Pfund Kartoffeln vom Gemüsegeschäft. Die Kartoffeln kaufe ich lieber auf dem Markt. 10 Hol bitte ein Pfund grüne Bohnen vom Gemüsegeschäft. Die grünen Bohnen kaufe ich lieber auf dem Markt.

Week 8

Exercise 1: 1 kann 2 müssen 3 darf 4 muss 5 darf 6 darf
7 kann

Exercise 2: 1 damit 2 darauf 3 danach 4 dazu 5 dafür
6 daneben 7 dagegen 8 dazwischen 9 dahinter 10 davor

Exercise 3: 1 tue/stelle 2 sind/liegen 3 tue/lege 4 tun/
stellen 5 tue/stelle 6 sind/steht 7 tue/lege 8 tue/stecke
9 tue/lege 10 ist/liegt 11 sind/liegen 12 tue/lege 13 tue/stelle

Exercise 4: Now look! I'll clear out the fridge as much as possible. Then you'll be able to find everything quite easily. I'm putting the chicken for Sunday, the frozen raspberry flan, and the two oven-ready meals into the freezer compartment. You can eat the oven-ready meals tomorrow and the day after. The plum tart and the dish with cream are at the top. I'm also putting the two bottles of wine there ... Oh, there's just a little space there still, I can put the carton of yoghurt in between. I'm putting the four bottles of beer in the bottom of the door, and two cartons of milk are next to them. I'm putting the packet of boiled ham, the salami, and the liver sausage in the middle. They're for evenings, obviously ... Eggs? ... I'm putting the eggs singly in the top of the door, of course, twelve of them. I'm putting two pieces of butter in the top compartment in the door. I'll leave the third one out to get soft. The flat container with three sorts of cheese is in the middle, and a tube of mayonnaise and the sliced cheese are behind it. The cucumber, lettuce, grapes, and tomatoes are at the bottom, and I'm putting the bag of oranges, one cauliflower, and the sprouts in the vegetable compartment right at the bottom. I'll put a little jar of honey and a jar of strawberry jam a little higher in the door ... My goodness, how full the fridge is again!

Week 9

Exercise 1: 1 denen 2 der 3 dem 4 das 5 der 6 das 7 den
8 die 9 denen 10 dem

Exercise 2: 1 hat/gebracht 2 ist/geflogen 3 sind/gestorben
4 hat/gestellt 5 ist/gesprungen 6 bin/geblieben 7 ist/gestiegen
8 habe/geschickt 9 haben/bekommen 10 bist/geworden

Exercise 3: 1 (b) 2 (c) 3 (a) 4 (b) 5 (a) 6 (c)

Week 10

Exercise 1: Ich habe vor, eine Party zu geben. Wir sind so viele, also richte ich meine Wohnung anders ein. Ich lade nur meine besten Freunde ein, aber wir sind fünfzig. Diesmal helfen meine Freunde mal nicht mit. Ich will alles alleine machen. Um 8 Uhr rufe ich sie an. Dann können sie kommen. Aber was sagen meine Freunde, sie schlagen stattdessen vor, gar nicht zu essen, sondern den ganzen Abend lang zu tanzen.

Exercise 2: 2 Anja steht früh auf, um mit ihrem Hund spazieren zu gehen. 3 Mittags kommt sie nach Hause und arbeitet im Garten, statt zu essen. 4 Am Nachmittag geht sie ins Kino, ohne jemanden zu fragen. 5 Sie sieht gerne Filme, um auf andere Gedanken zu kommen. 6 Am Abend kommt ihr Freund, um sie ins Restaurant einzuladen. 7 Sie verlässt das Restaurant während des Essens, ohne zu bezahlen. 8 Er bleibt im Restaurant sitzen und isst beide Portionen, statt seiner Freundin zu folgen.

Week 11

Exercise 1: 2 ..., dass Martin solche Vorschläge nicht machen soll. 3 ..., dass Paul endlich mal etwas tun soll.

4 ..., dass er sein Handgelenk plötzlich verletzt. 5 ..., dass er Paul zum Arzt schickt. 6 ..., dass Paul einfach faul ist!

Exercise 2: 2 Nachdem man gegessen hat, soll man eigentlich nicht schlafen. 3 Während man isst, darf man nicht zu viel reden. 4 Obwohl er viel geredet hat, hat er eigentlich nicht viel gesagt. 5 Weil das Wetter schön ist, müssen wir endlich im Garten arbeiten. 6 Bis das Programm anfängt, kannst du noch schön in der Küche helfen! 7 Weil du hohen Blutdruck hast, musst du weniger arbeiten. 8 Obwohl er starke Schmerzen hat, läuft er jeden Tag.

Week 12

Exercise 1: 2 Während Alex im Garten arbeitete, hat sich sein Bruder Musik angehört. 3 Während Hanna einen Brief schrieb, ist ihre Freundin schwimmen gegangen. 4 Während Markus Milch trank, hat sein Bruder Anton Wasser getrunken. 5 Während Frau Krause mit ihrem Nachbarn sprach, hat ein Einbrecher ihr Geld vom Küchentisch gestohlen. 6 Während sich die Eltern oben im Haus stritten, haben die Kinder unten im Haus eine Party gehalten. 7 Während Emil mit den Eltern sprach, hat Lea den Hund eingefangen.

Exercise 2: 2 (a) Wenn du die Fahrkarte besorgen würdest, dann hätten wir die Möglichkeit, am Wochenende in die Berge zu fahren. (b) Würdest du die Fahrkarte besorgen, dann hätten wir die Möglichkeit, am Wochenende in die Berge zu fahren. 3 (a) Wenn Peter nicht das Fenster schließt, dann wird es zu kalt für uns alle. (b) Schließt Peter nicht das Fenster, dann wird es zu kalt für uns alle. 4 (a) Wenn dieser Mann nicht den Club verlässt, dann wird es Krach geben. (b) Verlässt dieser Mann nicht den Club, dann wird es Krach geben. 5 (a) Wenn die kleine Tochter nicht fernsehen dürfte, dann wäre sie schwierig. (b) Dürfte die kleine Tochter nicht fernsehen, dann wäre sie

schwierig. 6 (a) Wenn der Vater in die Kneipe geht, dann sitzt er immer draußen. (b) Geht der Vater in die Kneipe, dann sitzt er immer draußen. 7 (a) Wenn du jetzt das Essen für Sonntag kochst, dann wirst du am Sonntagmorgen schlafen können. (b) Kochst du jetzt das Essen für Sonntag, dann wirst du am Sonntagmorgen schlafen können.

Week 13

Exercise 1: 2 Jedoch bucht Emil eine Fahrt nach Berlin.

Emil bucht jedoch eine Fahrt nach Berlin. (trotzdem, allerdings) 3 Allerdings gibt es sehr viele Touristen. Es gibt allerdings sehr viele Touristen. (deshalb, jedoch, außerdem) 4 Andererseits gibt es in Berlin viel zu sehen. In Berlin gibt es andererseits viel zu sehen. (jedoch) 5 Außerdem ist es historisch und politisch wichtig. Es ist außerdem historisch und politisch wichtig. (andererseits) 6 Immerhin war es vor einiger Zeit das Tor zwischen Westen und Osten. Es war immerhin vor einiger Zeit das Tor zwischen Westen und Osten. 7 Trotzdem hat er Berlin sehr interessant gefunden. Er hat trotzdem Berlin sehr interessant gefunden. (jedoch, allerdings, andererseits)

Exercise 2: 1 (a) 2 (c) 3 (b) 4 (b) 5 (b) 6 (c) 7 (c)

Mini-dictionary

In this mini-dictionary, the plural form of a noun is given in brackets. After a verb, (I) indicates TYPE I (inseparable prefix) verbs; (II) indicates TYPE II (separable prefix) verbs. For the numbers in German, see sections 4.2 and 7.4.

GERMAN-ENGLISH

- ab und zu** occasionally
der Abend (-e) evening
das Abendbrot (-e) dinner
abends in the evenings
die Abendveranstaltung (-en) evening entertainment/event
aber but
der Abfall (-e) rubbish, waste
abgesehen (davon) apart (from that)
abhängen (II) (von) to depend (on)
abholen (II) to collect, pick up
abhören (II) to listen to, check (e.g. heart)
abnehmen (II) to lose weight
der Abzug (-e) print, copy
Ach! Oh!
achten (auf) to pay attention (to), keep an eye (on)
die Ahnung (-en) idea, clue, notion
all all
alle zwei Tage every other day
allein(e) alone
allerdings admittedly, mind you, ... though
alles everything
das Allgäu (mountainous area in Southern Bavaria)
allgemein general, in general
als than, as, when
also so, therefore, well
alt old
das Alter (-) age
die Altstadt old (part of) town
am = an dem
an at, on, to, by, on to, up to
anbieten (II) to offer
anderer, etc. other, different
andererseits on the other hand
ändern to change, alter
anderthalb one and a half
der Anfang (-e) beginning, start
anfangen (II) to begin, start
der Anfänger (-) / die Anfängerin (-nen) beginner
die Angelegenheit (-en) matter, affair, business
angenehm pleasant
die Angst (-e) fear, anxiety, worry
anhalten (II) to stop, pull up
anhören (II) sich to listen to, sound
ankommen (II) to arrive
anrufen (II) to ring up, call, telephone
anschaffen (II) to get, acquire, obtain, buy
die Ansicht (-en) view, opinion
ansonsten otherwise, apart from that
anstatt instead (of)
anstrengend strenuous, energetic, exhausting
antworten to answer
anziehen (II) to put on (clothes)
anziehen (II) sich to get dressed
die Apfelsine (-n) orange
der April April
arabisch Arabic

arbeitslos unemployed	aussuchen (II) to choose, select
ärgern sich to get annoyed	austauschen (II) to exchange
arm poor	auswechseln (II) to replace
der Arzt (-e) / die Ärztin (-nen)	ausziehen (II) sich to get undressed
doctor	
auch also, too, even	das Auto (-s) car
auf on, on top of, on to	der Automat (-en noun) vending machine
der Aufkleber (-) sticker	die Axt (-e) axe
aufkommen (II) to (be liable to) pay	
aufmachen (II) to open	der Bäcker (-) / die Bäckerin (-nen) baker
die Aufnahme (-n) exposure, photo, shot	baden to bathe, swim
aufnehmen (II) to accept, admit	der Bahnhof (-e) station
aufpassen (II) to pay attention, take note, watch	bald soon
aufregen (II) sich to get excited/worked up	die Banane (-n) banana
der Aufschnitt sliced (cold) meat	die Bar (-s) bar
aufstehen (II) to get up	bauen to build
auftauchen (II) to turn up, appear	der Bauer (-n noun) / die Bäuerin (-nen) farmer
der Augenblick (-e) moment	der Baum (-e) tree
im Augenblick/ augenblicklich at the moment	der Becher (-) cup, mug, carton
der August August	bedanken (I) sich to say thank you, express thanks
aus out of, from	bedeuten (I) to mean
der Ausflug (-e) excursion, outing	bedienen (I) to serve
ausgeben (II) to spend	bedrohen (I) to threaten
ausgehen (II) to go out	beeilen (I) sich to hurry (up)
aushängen (II) to post, put up, display	befinden (I) sich to be situated
der Ausländer (-) / die Ausländerin (-nen) foreigner	begegnen (I) to meet
der Auslöser (-) shutter release	behalten (I) to keep
ausmachen (II) to put out, switch off	der Behälter (-) container
aussehen (II) to look, appear	behandeln (I) to treat
außerdem besides, moreover, furthermore	bei with, at, in
außerhalb outside (of)	beide , etc. both, two
äußerst extremely	das Beisammensein being with people, get-together
die Aussicht (-en) view, prospect	beitreten (II) to join
	bekannt known, well-known, acquainted
	der/die Bekannte (adj.) acquaintance
	beklagen (I) sich to complain
	bekommen (I) to get, obtain
	bemerken (I) to notice

benutzen (I) to use
der Berg (-e) mountain, hill
der Beruf (-e) job, trade,
 profession, occupation
beschränken (I) to limit,
 restrict
beschweren (I) sich
 to complain
der Besitzer (-) / die Besitzerin
 (-nen) proprietor, owner
besonder, etc. special
besonders especially
besorgen (I) to get, obtain
besprechen (I) to discuss, talk
 over
besser better
bestehen (I) (auf) to insist (on)
bestellen (I) to order
die Bestellung (-en) order
(am) besten best of all
bestimmt definite
besuchen (I) to visit, attend
betrinken (I) sich to get drunk
das Bett (-en) bed
der Beutel (-) bag
 bevor before
 bewegen (I) sich to move
 bezahlen (I) to pay for
das Bier beer
 bieten to offer
das Bild (-er) picture, photograph
 billig cheap, inexpensive
der Bindfaden string
 bis until, up to
 (ein) bisschen a bit
 bist (you) are (inf. sing.)
 bitte please
 Bitte schön? Can I help you?
 Bitte schön! Here you are!
 bitten (um) to ask (for),
 request
 blass pale
der Bleistift (-e) pencil
 blenden to dazzle
die Blume (-n) flower

das Blumengeschäft (-e) florist's
der Blumenkohl cauliflower
der Blutdruck blood pressure
 bluten to bleed
die Blutprobe (-n) blood test
der Boden (˘) floor, ground
die Bohne (-n) bean
 böse angry, naughty, wicked
 brauchen to need
 brechen to break
 breit wide
 brennen to burn
der Brief (-e) letter
 bringen to bring, take
das Brot (-e) bread, loaf
das Brötchen (-) roll
der Bruder (˘) brother
das Buch (˘er) book
der Buchstabe (-ns noun) letter
 (of the alphabet)
der Bus (-se) bus, coach
die Butter butter

der Cent (-s) cent
die Chance (-n) chance
 checken to check
der Chef (-s) / die Chefin (-nen)
 boss
die CD-Hülle CD case
der Club (-s) club
der Cousin (-s) / die Cousine (-n)
 cousin

 da there, then, as
das Dach (˘er) roof
 dafür for it, instead
 dagegen against it, on the
 other hand
 daher from there, therefore
 dahin (to) there
 dahinter behind it
 damals then, at that time
die Dame (-n) lady
 damit with it, in order that,
 so that

danach after that, afterwards	drücken to press
daneben next to it	du you (inf. sing.)
Danke(schön)! Thank you!	dumm silly, stupid
dann then	dunkel dark
darüber over it, above it, about it	durch through, by
darum about this, therefore, so	dürfen may, to be allowed to/able to
das the (neuter), that	die Dusche (-n) shower
dauern to last	duzen to use 'du'
davor before it	
dazu to it, with it	eben just, just now, simply
dazwischen between them	ebenfalls likewise
die Decke (-n) ceiling	ebenso just as
der Defekt (-e) fault	die Ecke (-n) corner
denken to think	egal all the same, regardless
denn for, as, since, then	ehemalig former
dennoch nevertheless, yet	das Ei (-er) egg
der/die/das , etc. the, that	eigen own
deren whose, of whom	eigentlich really, actually
derselbe , etc. the same	eilen to be urgent
deshalb therefore	ein , etc. a, one
dessen whose, of whom	einbegriffen included
deswegen on account of it, therefore	einbilden (II) sich to imagine
der Deutscher / die Deutsche German man/woman, people	der Einbrecher (-) / die Einbrecherin (-nen) burglar
der Dezember December	einfach simple
das Dia (-s) slide	eingeladen invited
dich you (inf. sing.)	einige , etc. some, a few
der Dienstag Tuesday	einkaufen (II) to do the shopping
dieser , etc. this	die Einkaufsliste (-n) shopping list
dir to/for you (inf. sing.)	einladen (II) to invite
der Direktor (-en) / die Direktorin (-nen) director	einmal once
doch but, however, after all	einnehmen (II) to eat, take, consume
der Donnerstag Thursday	einrichten (II) to furnish, arrange
das Doppelzimmer (-) double room	der Eintritt (-e) admission
dort there	einverstanden agreed
dorthin (to) there	einwandfrei perfect, flawless
die Dose (-n) can, tin, jar	einzeln separate, one by one
draußen outside	das Einzelzimmer (-) single room
das Drittel (-) third	das Eisfach (-er) freezer
drüben over there	compartment
der Druck (-e) pressure	

elegant elegant	euer your (inf. pl.)
der Elektriker (-) / die Elektrikerin (-nen) electrician	der Euro (-s) euro
empfehlen (I) to recommend	das Exemplar (-e) copy
empfinden (I) to feel	das Experiment (-e) experiment
endlich finally, at last	der Export (-e) export
enthalten (I) to contain, include	extra extra, on purpose, deliberately
die Entscheidung (-en) decision	das Fach (‘er) compartment, subject
entschuldigen (I) sich to apologize	fahren to go (by means of transport), travel
Entschuldigung! Excuse me!	die Fahrkarte (-n) ticket
die Entschuldigung (-en) excuse, apology	das Fahrrad (‘er) bicycle
entsprechen (I) to correspond	die Fahrt (-en) journey, trip
er he	fallen to fall
(meines) Erachtens in my opinion	falls in case
die Erdbeermarmelade strawberry jam	falsch wrong
der Erfolg (-e) success	fangen to catch
die Erfrischung (-en) refreshment	die Farbe (-n) colour, paint
das Ergebnis (-se) result	der Februar February
erinnern (I) sich (an) to remember	der Fehler (-) mistake, error
erkälten (I) sich to catch a cold	feiern to celebrate
erkältet sein to have a cold	die Feile (-n) file
die Erkältung (-en) cold	das Fenster (-) window
erscheinen (I) to appear	die Ferien (pl.) holiday(s)
ersetzen (I) to replace	das Fernsehen / der Fernseher television
erst first, only	die Fernsehzeitung (-en) TV magazine
erwarten (I) to expect, await	fertig ready, finished
erzählen (I) to tell, relate	das Fertigessen (-) oven-ready meal
die Erziehung education, upbringing	fest firm
es it	das Festessen (-) banquet
essen to eat	das Feuer (-) fire
das Essen (-) food, meal	das Feuerwerk fireworks
das Etikett (-en) label	fies nasty
etwa approximately, perhaps	die Figur (-en) figure
etwas something	der Film (-e) film
so etwas something/anything like that	finanzieren to finance
 euch you (inf. pl.)	finden to find
	der Fisch (-e) fish
	flach flat, shallow
	die Flasche (-n) bottle

das Fleisch meat	der Fünfzigeroschein (-e) fifty euro note
fliegen to fly	funktionieren to work, function
fliehen to flee	für for
der Fliesenleger (-) / die Fliesenlegerin (-nen) tiler	furchtbar terrible, frightful, fearful
flirten to flirt	fürchten sich (vor) to be afraid (of)
der Flur (-e) hall	ganz all, whole
die Folge (-n) consequence	gar nicht not at all
folgen to follow	gar nichts nothing at all
der Fotoapparat (-e) camera	die Garage (-n) garage
die Frage (-n) question	der Garten (˘) garden
in Frage kommen to be possible	der Gast (˘e) / die Gästin (-nen) guest, visitor (fem. form is rare)
nicht in Frage kommen to be out of the question	das Gasthaus (˘er) inn, hotel
fragen to ask	die Gaststube (-n) lounge (of inn/hotel)
der Franzose (-n noun) / die Französin (-nen) French man/woman	geben to give
französisch French	es gibt there is/are
die Frau (-en) woman, wife, Mrs	der Geburtstag (-e) birthday
frech cheeky, insolent	der Gedanke (-ns noun) thought
frei free, vacant	geduldig patient
freihalten (II) to keep clear	geeignet suitable, suited
freilich admittedly, to be sure	gefährlich dangerous
der Freitag Friday	gefallen (I) to please
freuen sich auf to look forward to	der/die Gefangene (adj.) prisoner
freuen sich (über) to be pleased/glad (about)	gefroren frozen
der Freund (-e) / die Freundin (-nen) friend, boy/girlfriend	gegen against, towards
freundlich kind, friendly	die Gegend (-en) area, region, neighbourhood
frisch fresh	das Gegenteil opposite
froh glad	gegenüber opposite
die Frucht (˘e) fruit	gegenzeichnen (II) to countersign
früh early	gehen to go, walk
früher earlier, former(ly)	es geht um it's about
der Frühling spring	Wie geht's? How's it going?
das Frühstück breakfast	gehören (I) to belong
fühlen sich to feel	gekocht boiled, cooked
der Führer (-) / die Führerin (-nen) guide, leader	gelb yellow
der Führerschein (-e) driving licence	das Geld money

die Gelegenheit (-en)	opportunity	gleich	straight away, immediately, at once, same, similar
das Gelenk (-e)	joint	das Glück	luck, happiness
gelingen (I)	to succeed	golden	gold, golden
das Gemüse	vegetables	das Gramm (-e)	gram
das Gemüsefach (‘er)	vegetable compartment	gratulieren	to congratulate
das Gemüsegeschäft (-e)	greengrocer’s	(es) graut mir (vor)	I have a horror (of)
genau	exact, precise	die Grenze (-n)	frontier, border
genieren sich	to be embarrassed	grillen	to grill
genießen (I)	to enjoy	groß	big, large, tall
genug	enough	die Größe (-n)	size
genügend	enough, sufficient	der Großvater (‘)	/
das Gepäck	luggage	die Großmutter (‘)	
gerade	just, just now		grandfather / grandmother
gerade erst	only just	der Grundpreis (-e)	basic price
geradeaus	straight ahead	die Gruppe (-n)	group
immer geradeaus (gehen)	to keep (going) straight ahead	grüßen	to greet, wave
das Gerät (-e)	machine, (piece of) equipment	Grüß Gott!	Hello!
gern	gladly	gucken	to look, peep
das Geschäft (-e)	business, shop	gut	good, well
geschehen (I)	to happen	Guten Abend/Morgen/Tag!	Good evening/morning/day!
geschlossen	closed	Meine Güte!	My goodness!
der Geschmack (‘e or ‘er)	taste	Na gut.	All right then.
die Geschwister (pl.)	brother(s) and/or sister(s)	haben	to have
gesellig	sociable	das Hackfleisch	minced meat
der Gesellschaftsraum (‘-e)	lounge	das Hähnchen (-)	chicken
gestern	yesterday	halb	half
gesund	healthy	die Hälfte (-n)	half
das Getränk (-e)	drink	Hallo!	Hello!
gewachsen sein	to be able to cope with	halt	just, simply
gewiss	certainly	halten	to hold
das Gewitter (-)	thunderstorm	halten (von)	to think (of/about)
gewöhnen (I) sich (an)	to get used/accustomed (to)	die Hand (‘-e)	hand
das Glas (‘er)	glass, jar	der Handball	handball
der Glaube (-ns noun)	belief	handeln sich um	to be about
glauben	to believe, think	das Handgelenk (-e)	wrist
		harmlos	harmless, innocuous
		hart	hard
		hast (you) have (inf. sing.)	
		der Haufen (-)	heap, pile

das Haus (-er) house	die Hochzeit (-en) wedding
nach Hause (to) home	hoffen to hope
zu Hause at home	hoffentlich hopefully
der Hausbesitzer (-) / die Hausbesitzerin (-nen) house owner	höflich polite
der Hausschlüssel (-) house key, front door key	holen to fetch, bring
die Haustür (-en) front door	der Honig honey
heiraten to marry	hören to hear
heiß hot	das Hotel (-s) hotel
heißen to be called	die Hülle case
das heißt that is (to say)	der Hund (-e) dog
der Held (-en noun) / die Heldin (-nen) hero	der Hunger hunger
helfen to help	ich I
der Helfer (-) / die Helferin (-nen) assistant	ihm to/for him/it
hell light, bright	ihn him
herausnehmen (II) to take out	ihnen to/for them
der Herbst autumn	Ihnen to/for you (formal)
der Herr (-n noun, pl. -en) gentleman, Mr	ihr her, their, to/for her
herrlich splendid, glorious	Ihr your (formal)
das Herz (-ens noun, pl. -en) heart	immer always
heute today	immer wieder again and again, repeatedly
heute Abend this evening	immerhin after all
heutzutage nowadays, now	in in, into
hier here	indem by
die Himbeertorte (-n) raspberry tart/flan	die Inflation inflation
hin und her backwards and forwards, to and fro	infolgedessen consequently
hin und zurück there and back, return	informieren to inform
hingegen on the other hand	inklusive inclusive
hinlegen (II) sich to lie down	innerhalb inside of
hinten at the back, behind	installieren to install
hinter behind	das Instrument (-e) instrument
hinterher afterwards, later	interessant interesting
der Hinweg (-e) outward journey	interessieren to interest
historisch historic, historical	interessieren sich (für) to be interested (in)
hoch high	interessiert (an) interested (in)
am höchsten highest	irgendein some or other, any
	irgendwo somewhere, anywhere
	ist is
	ja yes, of course
	das Jahr (-e) year
	jahrelang for years

der Januar January
Jawohl! Certainly!
je each, ever
jedenfalls at any rate
jeder, etc. every, each, any
jedoch however
jemals ever
jemand, etc. someone
jener, etc. that
jenseits on the far side (of),
 beyond
jetzt now
jeweils each time
das Joghurt (-s) yoghurt
der Juli July
jung young
der Junge (-n noun, pl. -n) boy
der Juni June

der Kaffee coffee
die Kalorie (-n) calorie
kalt cold
kaputt broken (down),
 exhausted
die Karotte (-n) carrot
die Kartoffel (-n) potato
der Käse cheese
der Kassenbon (-s) sales receipt
die Katastrophe (-n) catastrophe
die Katze (-n) cat
der Kauf ("e) purchase
kaufen to buy
kaum scarcely, hardly
kein not a, no, not any
der Kellner (-) / die Kellnerin (-nen) waiter / waitress
kennen to know (someone,
 a place, object, etc.)
das Kind (-er) child
der Kinderarzt ("e) / die Kinderärztin (-nen)
 paediatrician
das Kino (-s) cinema
die Kirche (-n) church
klagen to complain

die Klarinette (-n) clarinet
der/die Klassenbeste (adj.)
 best in the class
der Klassenkamerad (-en noun) / die Klassenkameradin (-nen) classmate
das Klavier (-e) piano
der Klavierlehrer (-) / die Klavierlehrerin (-nen)
 piano teacher
das Kleid (-er) dress
klein small, little
klingen to sound
klopfen to knock
klug clever
die Kneipe (-n) pub, bar
der Koffer (-) suitcase
der Kohl cabbage
der Komfort comfort
kommen to come
kommen zu to happen
die Konferenz (-en) conference
können can, to be able to
kontrollieren to check
das Konzert (-e) concert
der Kopf ("e) head
der Kopfsalat lettuce
der Korken (-) cork
kosten to cost
der Krach noise, racket, quarrel
krank ill, sick
die Krankheit (-en) illness, disease
die Kreuzung (-en) crossroads,
 junction, intersection
kriechen to creep, crawl
kriegen to get
die Kritik (-en) criticism
die Küche (-n) kitchen
der Kuchen (-) cake
der Kühlschrank ("e) fridge
der Kunde (-n noun) / die Kundin (-nen) customer
die Kusine (-n) female cousin
der Kurs (-e) course, exchange rate
kurz short

kurz danach shortly after	es macht nichts it doesn't matter
kurz davor shortly before	
lachen to laugh	das Mädchen (-) girl
landen to land	mager lean, thin
lang(e) long	der Mai May
langsam slow	mal just
langweilig boring	das Mal (-e) time, occasion
lassen to let, make, leave	malen to paint
laufen to run, walk	man one, you, people
laut loud, noisy	manche , etc. quite a few, a fair number of
lecker tasty, delicious	manchmal sometimes
leer empty	der Mann (˚er) man, husband
legen to put, lay (flat)	manuell manual
der Lehrer (-) / die Lehrerin (-nen) teacher	die Manteltasche (-n) coat pocket
leicht easy	der Markt (˚e) market
leiden to suffer	der Marktplatz (˚e) marketplace
leider unfortunately, (to be) sorry (that)	der März March
leihen to lend, borrow	die Maschine (-n) machine, plane
leisten to achieve, manage, accomplish	der Maurer (-) / die Maurerin (-nen) bricklayer
lesen to read	die Mayonnaise mayonnaise
letztens recently, lately	das Mehl flour
die Leute (pl.) people	mehr more
das Licht (-er) light	mehrere , etc. several
die Liebe (-n) love	mein , etc. my
lieben to love	meinen to think, mean, say
lieber rather	meinetwegen on my account, as far as I'm concerned
das Lieblingsreiseziel (-e) favourite destination	die Meinung (-en) opinion
liegen to lie, be (situated)	(am) meisten most of all
liegen lassen to leave (lying) about/behind	der Mensch (-en noun) person, human being, (pl.) people
die Limonade (-n) lemonade	merken to notice
losfahren (II) to set out, come out, drive off	messen to measure
loslassen (II) to set off	das Messer (-) knife
der Löwe (-n noun) lion	der Meter (-) metre
lügen to lie (fib)	der Metzger (-) / die Metzgerin (-nen) butcher
der Luxus luxury	mich me, myself
	die Miete (-n) rent
machen to make, do	der Mieter (-) / die Mieterin (-nen) tenant
machen sich nichts daraus to not worry about it	die Milch milk
	die Milchkanne (-n) milk jug

der Minister (-) / die Ministerin (-nen) minister

misslingen (I) to fail

mit with

mitbringen (II) to bring
(with one)

mithelfen (II) to assist, help,
cooperate

das Mitleid sympathy, pity

das Mittagessen (-) lunch

die Mitte (-n) middle

das Mittelmeer Mediterranean
mitten in the middle

die Mitternacht ("e) midnight

der Mittwoch Wednesday

mögen may, to like

die Möglichkeit (-en) possibility,
opportunity

möglichst as far as possible

der Moment (-e) moment

im Moment at the moment

Moment mal! Just a moment!

momentan at the moment

der Monat (-e) month

der Montag Monday

morgen tomorrow

müde tired

die Musik music

müssen must, to have to

die Mutter (") mother

Na gut. All right then.

nach after, to, according to

der Nachbar (-n noun) / die

Nachbarin (-nen) neighbour

nachdem after

nachher afterwards

nachholen (II) to catch up

der Nachmittag (-e) afternoon

nächst next, nearest

am nächsten nearest of all

die Nacht ("e) night

der Nachttisch (-e) bedside table

nahe near

nähern sich to approach

nämlich namely, in fact

nass wet

natürlich naturally, of course

neben next to, alongside

nehmen to take

nein no

die Nelke (-n) carnation

nett nice, kind, good

das Netz (-e) net

neu new

das Neujahr New Year

das Neujahrsfrühstück (-e) New
Year's (Day) breakfast

der Neujahrstag (-e) New Year's
Day

neulich recently

nicht not

nichts nothing

nichts los nothing happening/
doing

nichts mehr no more

nie never

niedrig low

niemand, etc. no one, nobody

noch still, yet, even, nor

die Nordsee North Sea

der November November

null nought, zero, nil

das Nummernschild (-er)

number plate, licence plate

nun now, well (now)

nur only

ob whether

oben upstairs, at the top

ober, etc. top, upper

obwohl although

oder or

offen open

offensichtlich obvious,
evident, clear

öffnen to open

oft often

ohne without

ohnehin anyway, as it is

der Oktober October	praktisch practical, handy
das Öl oil	der Präsident (-en noun) / die Präsidentin (-nen) president
das Orchester (-) orchestra	der Preis (-e) price
die Ordnung order	preiswert reasonably priced
der Orthopäde (-n noun) / die Orthopädin (-nen) orthopaedics specialist	pro per
der Osten east	probieren to try
östlich east, eastern	das Problem (-e) problem
	das Programm (-e) programme
	prüfen to test
das Paar (-e) pair, couple	die Prüfung (-en) test, examination
ein paar a few	der Pullover (-) pullover, sweater
die Packung (-en) pack, packet	das Quintett (-e) quintet
die Palette (-n) palette	der Rahmen (-) frame
das Papier (-e) paper	rasen to rush
parken to park	rasieren sich to shave
passen to fit, suit	raten to advise, guess
passieren to happen	das Rathaus (-er) town hall
der Patient (-en noun) / die Patientin (-nen) patient	rauchen to smoke
die Pause (-n) break, interval, pause	der Raum (-e) room, space
das Pech bad luck	Recht haben to be right
Pech haben to be unlucky	rechts to/on the right
die Person (-en) person	der Rechtsanwalt (-e) / die Rechtsanwältin (-nen) lawyer
persönlich personal	die Rede (-n) speech, talk
der Pfeffer pepper	reden to speak, talk
pfeifen to whistle	das Regal (-e) shelf
der Pfeifton (-e) whistling sound	regelmäßig regular
der Pflaumenkuchen (-) plum tart	der Regenschirm (-e) umbrella
das Pfund (-e) pound (500 grams)	regnen to rain
das Picknick (-s) picnic	reich rich, wealthy
der Pinsel (-) brush	reichen to pass, hand, reach
der Plan (-e) plan	reichhaltig varied, comprehensive, extensive
planen to plan	der Reifen (-) tyre
der Platz (-e) place, room, space, seat, square	die Reihe (-n) row, series
plötzlich sudden	reintun (II) to put in
der Politiker (-) / die Politikerin (-nen) politician	der Reis rice
politisch political	der Reiseleiter (-) / die Reiseleiterin (-nen) courier
der Polizist (-en noun) / die Polizistin (-nen) police officer	

der Reisepass (˚e) passport	das Schloss (˚er) lock, palace
die Reklamation (-en) complaint, refund	der Schlüssel (-) key
die Revolution (-en) revolution	schmecken to taste (good)
das Rezept (-e) recipe, prescription	der Schmerz (-en) pain, ache
richtig correct, right, proper	schmutzig dirty, filthy
riechen to smell	schneiden to cut
röntgen to X-ray	schnell quick, fast
die Rose (-n) rose	schon already, even
der Rosenkohl Brussels sprouts	schön nice, lovely, pretty, beautiful
rostig rusty	schonen to spare, save
rot red	der Schrank (˚e) cupboard, wardrobe
der Rotwein red wine	schrecklich terrible, awful
die Rückfahrt (-en) return journey	schreiben to write
der Ruf (-e) call, reputation	der Schuh (-e) shoe
rufen to call (out)	der Schulanfang (˚-e) start of school
ruhig quiet, calm	die Schuld (-en) fault, debt
die Sache (-n) thing, item	die Schule (-n) school
sagen to say, tell	die Schüssel (-n) dish
die Sahnesoße (-n) cream sauce	schwach weak
die Salami salami	der Schwager (˚) / die Schwägerin (-nen) brother-in-law / sister-in-law
der Salat (-e) salad	schwarz black
das Salz salt	schwätzen gossip, chatter
der Samstag Saturday	schwer heavy, serious, difficult
satt full, satisfied	die Schwester (-n) sister
sauer sour	die Schwiegertochter (˚) daughter-in-law
schaffen to manage, do, make, create	schwierig difficult, awkward
schämen sich to be ashamed	die Schwierigkeit (-en) difficulty
der Scheibenkäse sliced cheese	schwimmen to swim
scheinen to seem, shine	sehen to see
schenken to give (as a present)	sehnen sich (nach) to long (for)
schicken to send	sehr very
der Schinken (-) ham	sein to be, his, its
schlafen to sleep	seit since, for
das Schlafzimmer (-) bedroom	seitdem since (then)
schlagen to hit, beat	die Seite (-n) side, page
die Schlagsahne whipped cream, whipping cream	der Sekretär (-e) / die Sekretärin (-nen) secretary
schlecht bad, poor	
schließen to shut, close	
schließlich finally, after all	

- das Sektfrühstück (-e)**
champagne breakfast
- die Sekunde (-n)** second
- selber**, etc. same
- selbst** -self, even
- selten** seldom, rarely
- der Semmelknödel (-)** dumpling
- der September** September
- servieren** to serve
- die Show (-s)** show
- sicher** sure, certain, reliable
- sie** she, her, they, them
- Sie** you (formal)
- die Silvesterfahrt (-en)** New Year('s Eve) trip
- das Silvesterfestessen (-)** New Year's Eve banquet
- sind** we/they/you (formal) are
- singen** to sing
- sinken** to sink
- sitzen** to sit
- das Skelett (-e)** skeleton
- das Skifahren** skiing
- die Skimöglichkeit (-en)**
opportunity for skiing,
(pl.) skiing facilities
- so** so, like this/that
- so (et)was** something/
anything like that
- so ... wie** as ... as
- sobald** as soon
- sofort** immediately, straight away
- der Sohn (˚e)** son
- solcher**, etc. such
- der Soldat (-en noun) /**
die Soldatin (-nen) soldier
- sollen** should, ought to
- somit** therefore, thereby
- der Sommer (-)** summer
- sondern** but
- der Sonderpreis (-e)** special price
- der Sonabend (-e)** Saturday
- die Sonne** sun
- sonnen sich** to sunbathe
- der Sonntag (-e)** Sunday
- sonst** otherwise, at other times, or else
- die Sorge (-n)** worry, concern
- sorgen (für)** to see (to), take care (of)
- die Sorte (-n)** sort, type, kind
- sowieso** anyway
- sparen** to save
- die Sparsamkeit** thrift, economy
- der Spaß (˚e)** joke, fun
- Viel Spaß!** Enjoy yourself!
- (zu) spät** late
- später** later, afterwards
- spazieren gehen** to go for a walk
- spielen** to play
- der Sportler (-) / die Sportlerin (-nen)** sportsperson, athlete
- der Sportwagen (-)** sports car
- sprechen** to speak, talk
- springen** to jump
- die Stadt (˚e)** town
- der Stadtführer (-) /**
die Stadtführerin (-nen)
town guide
- stammen (von/aus)** to originate (in), come (from)
- stark** strong
- starten** to start, take off
- statt** instead of
- stattdessen** instead (of that)
- das Steak (-s)** steak
- stecken** to be (situated), put (inside), insert
- stehen** to stand
- stehlen** to steal
- steif** stiff
- steigen** to climb
- die Stelle (-n)** place
- stellen** to put, place (upright)
- sterben** to die
- (im) Stich lassen** to leave in the lurch

stoppen to stop, halt	die Tochter (˘) daughter
stören to disturb	die Toilette (-n) toilet
stoßen to bump	die Tomate (-n) tomato
der Strand (˘e) beach	der Ton (˘e) sound, tone
die Straße (-n) street, road	das Tor (-e) gate, gateway, goal
streiten to quarrel	der Tourist (-en noun) /
der Strom (˘e) electricity	die Touristin (-nen) tourist
das Stück (-e) piece, item	die Touristeninformation (-en)
der Student (-en noun) / die	tourist information office
Studentin (-nen) student	tragen to carry, wear
studieren to study	treffen to meet
die Stunde (-n) hour	treiben to drive
stundenlang for hours	trennen to separate
suchen to look for	die Treppe (-n) stairs, staircase
der Supermarkt (˘e) supermarket	treten to step, kick
	trinken to drink
der Tag (-e) day	der Tropfen (-) drop
Guten Tag! Hello!	trotz in spite of
die Tageszeitung (-en) daily	trotzdem in spite of (that),
(news)paper	nevertheless
tagüber during the daytime	das T-Shirt (-s) T-shirt
die Tante (-n) aunt	die Tube (-n) tube
der Tanz (˘e) dance	tun to do, put
tanzen to dance	die Tür (-en) door
die Tasche (-n) pocket	
in die Tasche greifen to dip	über over, across, about
into one's pocket	überdies besides
das Taschengeld pocket money	das Übergewicht excess weight
die Tasse (-n) cup	überhaupt in general, at all,
der Teilnehmer (-) /	altogether
die Teilnehmerin (-nen)	überlassen (I) to leave
participant	der/die Überlebende (adj.)
das Telefon (-e) telephone	survivor
telefonieren to phone	übermorgen the day after
die Telefonnummer (-n)	tomorrow
telephone number	die Übernachtung (-en)
das Tennis tennis	overnight stay
der Teppich (-e) carpet	überreden (I) to persuade
teuer expensive	die Überstunde (-n) (pl.)
Wie teuer? How much?	overtime
das Theater (-) theatre	überweisen (I) to transfer
der Theaterplatz Theatre Square	übrigens by the way
die Theke (-n) counter	überübermorgen the day
die Tiefkühltruhe (-n) freezer	after the day after
die Tischdecke (-n) tablecloth	tomorrow

- die Uhr (-en)** clock, watch,
o'clock, time
um around, about, at
um ... zu in order to, so as to
umgehen (II) mit to handle,
deal with
- der Umzug** move, removal
unangenehm unpleasant,
embarrassing
unbedingt absolute, really,
without fail
unberechtigt unjustified
und and
- die Unruhe (-n)** disturbance,
noise
uns (to/for) us
unser our
unsympathisch unpleasant,
uncongenial
unten downstairs, at the
bottom, below
unter under, below, beneath
unterbringen (II) to
accommodate
- die Unterhaltung (-en)**
entertainment, conversation
- die Unterkunft ("e)**
accommodation
unterschreiben (I) to sign
untersuchen (I) to examine
unterwegs on the way
unwichtig unimportant
- der Urin** urine
der Urlaub (-e) holiday(s)
- die Vase (-n)** vase
der Vater (") father
veranstalten (I) to arrange,
put on
- die Veranstaltung (-en)**
entertainment event
- die Verantwortung** responsibility
- der Verbrecher (-) / die
Verbrecherin (-nen)** criminal
verbringen (I) to spend (time)
- die Vereinigten Staaten (pl.)**
the United States
vergessen (I) to forget
- das Verhältnis (-se)** relationship;
(pl.) means, circumstances
verheiratet married
verirren (I) sich to get lost
verkaufen (I) to sell
verlassen (I) to leave
verlaufen (I) sich to get lost
verletzen (I) to injure, hurt
verletzen (I) sich to get hurt
verlieren (I) to lose
- der Verlust (-e)** loss
vernünftig sensible
verrückt insane, crazy
verschieden different
verschulden (I) sich to get
into debt, go into the red
versprechen (I) to promise
verstehen (I) to understand
- der Versuch (-e)** attempt
versuchen (I) to try
vertun (I) to make a
mistake, slip up
- der/die Verwandte (adj.)** relative
verzeihen (I) to forgive, pardon
- der Vetter (-)** male cousin
viel much, a lot
viele, etc. much, many
vielleicht perhaps
- das Viertel (-)** quarter
- die Viertelstunde (-n)** quarter
of an hour
voll full
vollkommen perfect
von from, of, by
vor before, in front of, ago
vorbeischauen (II) to look in
vorbereiten (II) to prepare
- die Vorbereitung (-en)** preparation
vorbeugen (II) to avert
vorfinden (II) to find, discover
vorgestern the day before
yesterday

- vorhaben (II)** to intend, have planned
- der Vorhang (-e)** curtain
- vorher** before (that)
- vorhin** a little/short time ago
- vorige**, etc. last, previous
- vorkommen (II)** to happen
- vornehmen (II)** to undertake
- vorn** at the front
- vorrätig** in stock, to hand
- vorschießen (II)** to advance (money)
- der Vorschlag (-e)** suggestion, proposal
- vorschlagen (II)** to propose
- der Vorschuss (-e)** advance
- vorsichtig** careful, cautious
- vorstellen (II)** to introduce
- vorstellen (II) sich** to imagine
- wachsen** to grow
- der Wagen (-)** car
- die Wahl (-en)** choice, election
- wahnsinnig** crazy
- während** in the course of, during, while
- währenddessen** during that
- wahrscheinlich** probably
- der Wald (-er)** wood, forest
- wann(?)** when(?)
- warm** warm, hot
- warten (auf)** to wait (for)
- warum?** why?
- was(?)** what(?)
- was = etwas**
- was für (ein)?** what sort of (a)?
- waschen** to wash
- waschen sich** to wash, have a wash, get washed
- das Wasser** water
- das Wassersystem (-e)** plumbing, water system
- weg** away, gone
- der Weg (-e)** way, path
- wegen** on account of, because of
- weggehen (II)** to go away
- (dabei) wegkommen (II) (mit)** to get away (with)
- wegwerfen (II)** to throw away
- weich** soft
- das Weihnachten (-)** Christmas
- die Weihnachtsferien (pl.)** Christmas holiday(s)
- weil** because
- der Wein (-e)** wine
- die Weintraube (-n)** grape
- weiß** white
- weiß** knows
- das Weißbrot (-e)** loaf of white bread
- weiter** further
- weiterdrehen (II)** to turn on/further
- welcher**, etc.(?)(!) which(?), what(?)(!)
- der Weltkrieg (-e)** world war
- wem?** (to/for) whom?
- wen?** who(m)?
- wenig** little
- wenige**, etc. little, few
- wenigstens** at least
- wenn** if, when, whenever
- wer?** who?
- werden** will, shall, to be going to, to become
- werfen** to throw
- wesentlich** essential, significant, substantial
- wessen?** whose?
- der Westen** west
- das Wetter** weather
- wichtig** important
- widersprechen (I)** to contradict
- wie(?)** how(?)
- Wie (bitte)?** Pardon?

wieder again	zeigen to show
(Auf) Wiedersehen!	die Zeit (-en) time
Goodbye!	vor einiger Zeit some time ago
Wieso (denn)? How's that?	in letzter Zeit recently
Wie viel? How much?	eine Zeit lang for a time
Wie viele? How many?	die Zeitung (-en) newspaper
der Wille (-ns noun) will	zerstören (I) to destroy
der Winter (-) winter	ziehen to pull, move
der Winterprospekt (-e) winter brochure	ziemlich fairly, rather, pretty
winzig tiny, minute	das Zimmer (-) room
wir we	zögern to hesitate
der Wirt (-e) / die Wirtin (-nen)	zu to, at, too
landlord / landlady	der Zucker sugar
wissen to know (a fact)	zudem besides
witzig funny, amusing	zufällig by (any) chance
wo(?) where(?)	der Zug (˘e) train, draught, procession
die Woche (-n) week	zuhören (II) to listen
das Wochenende (-n) weekend	die Zündkerze (-n) spark plug
wohl well, probably, no doubt	zunehmen (II) to put on weight
wohnen to live, reside	zurück back
die Wohnung (-en) flat, dwelling	zusammen (al)together
der Wohnwagen (-) caravan	der Zuschlag (˘e) surcharge
das Wohnzimmer (-) living room, lounge	zustehen (II) to be due
der Wohnzimmertisch (-e)	zwar to be sure, admittedly
living room table	und zwar namely
wollen to want, intend	zweimal twice
das Wort (˘-er or -e) word	der Zwilling (-e) twin
worüber over/about which	zwischen between
wundern sich to be surprised	das Zypern Cyprus
wunderschön beautiful	
der Wunsch (˘e) wish	
wünschen to wish, desire	
die Wurst (˘e) sausage	
die Zahl (-en) number	
zahlen to pay	
zählen to count	
der Zähler (-) counter	
der Zahnarzt (˘e) /	
die Zahnärztin (-nen)	
dentist	
der Zehneuroschein (-e) ten euro note	

Index

The numbers refer to sections, not pages.

- 'a' / 'an' 4.1
- accusative case 3.1, 4.1, 6.1, 7.3, 9.1
- address, formal/informal 3.2, 7.5, 13.3
- adjectives 5.4, 7.3
 - as nouns 11.2
 - possessive 7.2
- adverbs 5.4
- alphabet 1.2
- auxiliary verbs 8.2–8.3, 9.5
- 'to be' 3.3, 6.2, 8.5–8.6
- 'by ... -ing' 13.1
- case 3.1, 4.1, 4.4, 10.1
- clauses:
 - linking 11.3–11.4
 - participle 13.9
 - subordinate 10.5–10.7, 11.3, 13.4
- commands 5.3
- comparison of
 - adjectives/adverbs 5.4
- conditional sentences 12.6
- conjunctions 11.3–11.4, 13.2
- consonants 1.5
- da(r)**- 8.8
- dates 9.8
- dative case
 - 4.4–4.5, 6.1, 7.3, 9.1
- days of the week 9.8
- der, die, das** and related words 2.3–2.4, 3.1, 4.4, 7.1, 9.1, 10.1
- direct objects (DO) 3.1, 4.1, 6.1, 7.3, 9.1
- ein** and related words 4.1, 7.2, 10.1
- expressions 6.2, 10.7, 13.5
- formal address 3.2
- future 8.1, 9.2
- gender of nouns 2.3
- genitive case 10.1–10.2
- greetings 2.2
- 'to have' (**haben**) 3.3, 7.5, 10.10, 13.3
- idiomatic particles that express mood 12.8
- imperative (commands) 5.3
- impersonal expressions 11.6, 13.5; **es gibt** 6.2
- indirect objects (IO) 4.4–4.5, 6.1, 7.3, 9.1
- indirect speech (reported) 13.7–13.8
- infinitives 8.2, 10.5, 12.7, 13.4
- informal address 7.5, 13.3
- inseparable prefixes 9.7
- linking words 11.3–11.4, 13.2
- location, expressing 8.5–8.6
- measurements 8.4, 11.1
- months of the year 9.8

- negative sentences 5.2
- nominative case (SU) 3.1
- nouns 2.3
 - dative plural ending 7.3
 - genitive singular ending 10.1
 - masculine **-n** nouns 10.3
 - plural 2.5
- numbers 4.2, 8.4
 - ordinal 7.4
- ohne ... zu** 10.7
- participles:
 - participle clauses 13.9
 - past participle 9.4, 9.6–9.7
 - present participle 11.2, 13.1, 13.9
- passive voice 10.8, 12.7
- past perfect tense 12.3
- past tense (simple past) 10.10, 12.1–12.2
- perfect tenses
 - past perfect 12.3
 - present perfect 9.4–9.7, 10.9
- possession (genitive case) 10.1–10.2
- possessive adjectives 7.2
- prepositions 6.1, 9.1, 10.2, 11.4
- present perfect tense 9.4–9.7, 10.9
- present tense 3.3, 7.5, 9.3, 9.2–9.3, 13.3
- prices 4.3
- pronouns 3.2, 4.4, 7.5, 13.3
 - reflexive 11.5–11.6
- pronunciation 1.1–1.7
 - consonants 1.3, 1.5
 - vowels 1.4
- punctuation 1.8, 13.7
- ‘to put’ 8.7
- quantities 8.4, 11.1
- questions 5.1
 - question tags 9.9
- reflexive:
 - pronouns 11.5–11.6
 - verbs 11.6
- requests (imperative) 5.3
- sein** 3.3, 7.5, 8.5, 9.5, 10.10, 12.4, 13.6
- separable prefixes 9.7, 10.4
- statt ... zu** 10.7
- subject (SU) 3.1
- subjunctive:
 - general (II) 12.4–12.6, 13.7
 - special (I) 13.6–13.7
- superlative of adjectives/ adverbs 5.4, 7.3
- tags, question 9.9
- ‘the’ 2.3–2.4, 3.1, 4.4, 10.1
- ‘there is’ / ‘there are’ 6.2, 8.5
- time, expressions of 9.8
- trotzdem** 13.1
- um ... zu** 10.6
- verbs 3.3
 - auxiliary 8.2–8.3
 - conjugated 8.1, 10.4
 - infinitive 8.2, 10.5, 12.7, 13.4
 - modal 8.2–8.3
 - reflexive 11.6
 - requiring dative case 4.5

werden 8.2–8.3, 10.8

‘without ...-ing’ 10.7

wo(r)- 11.4

word order 2.1, 7.6, 8.1,
10.4–10.5, 11.4